SEAT

OWNER'S MANUAL

Toledo

About this manual

This manual contains a description of the **equipment** supplied with the vehicle at the time this manual was published. Some of the units described herein will not be available until a later date or are only available in certain markets.

Because this is a general manual for the TOLEDO, some of the equipment and functions that are described in this manual are not included in all types or variants of the model; they may vary or be modified depending on the technical requirements and on the market; this is in no way deceptive advertising.

The **illustrations** are intended as a general guide and may vary from the equipment fitted in your vehicle in some details.

The **steering indications** (left, right, forward, reverse) appearing in this manual refer to the normal driving movements of the vehicle except when otherwise indicated.

✱ The **equipment marked with an asterisk*** is fitted as standard only in certain versions, and is only supplied as optional extras for some versions, or are only offered in certain countries.

® All **registered marks** are indicated with ®. Although the copyright symbol does not appear, it is a copyrighted mark.

» The section is continued on the following page.

Important warnings on a given page

Detailed contents on a given page

General information on a given page

SOS Emergency information on a given page

⚠ WARNING

Texts preceded by this symbol contain information on safety. They warn you about possible dangers of accident or injury.

CAUTION

Texts with this symbol draw your attention to potential sources of damage to your vehicle.

For the sake of the environment

Texts preceded by this symbol contain relevant information concerning environmental protection.

Note

Texts preceded by this symbol contain additional information.

This manual is divided into six large parts, which are:

1. The essentials
2. Safety
3. Emergencies
4. Operation
5. Tips
6. Technical data

At the end of this manual, there is a detailed alphabetical index that will help you quickly find the information you require.

Foreword

This Instruction Manual and its corresponding supplements should be read carefully to familiarise yourself with your vehicle.

Besides the regular care and maintenance of the vehicle, its correct handling will help preserve its value.

For safety reasons, always note the information concerning accessories, modifications and part replacements.

If selling the vehicle, give all of the on-board documentation to the new owner, as it should be kept with the vehicle.

You can access the information in this manual using:

- Thematic table of contents that follows the manual's general chapter structure.
- Visual table of contents that uses graphics to indicate the pages containing "essential" information, which is detailed in the corresponding chapters.
- Alphabetical index with many terms and synonyms to help you find information.

⚠ WARNING

Read and always observe safety information concerning the passenger's front airbag **»» page 73, Important information regarding the front passenger's airbag.**

Table of Contents

The essentials 5
Exterior view 5
Exterior view 6
Interior view (left-hand drive) 7
Interior view (right-hand drive) 8
How it works 9
Unlocking and locking 9
Before driving 11
Airbags 14
Child seats 16
Starting the vehicle 18
Lights and visibility 18
Easy Connect 21
Driver information system 23
Driving data 26
Cruise control 31
Warning lamps 32
Gearbox lever 34
Air conditioning 36
Fluid Level control 39
Emergencies 43
Fuses 43
Bulbs 44
Action in the event of a puncture 44
Changing a wheel 46
Snow chains 49
Emergency towing of the vehicle 50
How to jump start 51
Changing the windscreen wiper blades 53

Safety 55
Safe driving 55
Safety first! 55
Advice about driving 55
Correct position for passengers 56
Pedal area 60
Seat belts 61
The whys and wherefores of seat belts 61
How to properly adjust your seatbelt 64
Seat belt tensioners 65
Airbag system 66
Brief introduction 66
Airbag safety instructions 69
Deactivating airbags 71
Transporting children safely 72
Safety for children 72
Child seats 74

Emergencies 75
Self-help 75
Emergency equipment 75
Changing a wheel 75
Tyre repairs 76
Towing the vehicle 78
Fuses and bulbs 80
Fuses 80
Changing bulbs 83
Changing the fog light bulbs 86
Changing the rear lights (on the side panel) 87
Changing tail lights (on the rear lid) 89
Changing the bulb on the number plate 91

Operation 93
Controls and displays 93
General instrument panel 92
Instruments and warning lamps 94
Instruments 94
Control lamps 98
Introduction to the Easy Connect system* 99
System settings (CAR)* 99
Communications and multimedia 100
Steering wheel controls* 100
Multimedia 104
Opening and closing 104
Remote control 104
Keys 105
Central locking system 107
Anti-theft alarm system* 112
Rear lid 113
Opening and closing of electric windows 115
Lights and visibility 116
Lights 116
Interior lights 122
Visibility 123
Windscreen wipers and windscreen washers 124
Mirrors 126
Seats and head restraints 127
Adjusting seats and head restraints 127
Seat functions 128
Transport and practical equipment 131
Practical equipment 131
Storing objects 137
Luggage compartment 138
Roof rack* 141
Air conditioning 142
Heating and air conditioning 142
Heating and fresh air 144
Air conditioning (manual)* 145
Climatronic* (automatic air conditioning) 147
Driving 149
Starting and stopping the engine 149
Brakes and brake servo systems 152
Braking and stability systems 154
Manual gearbox 156
Automatic gearbox 157
Run-in and economical driving 161

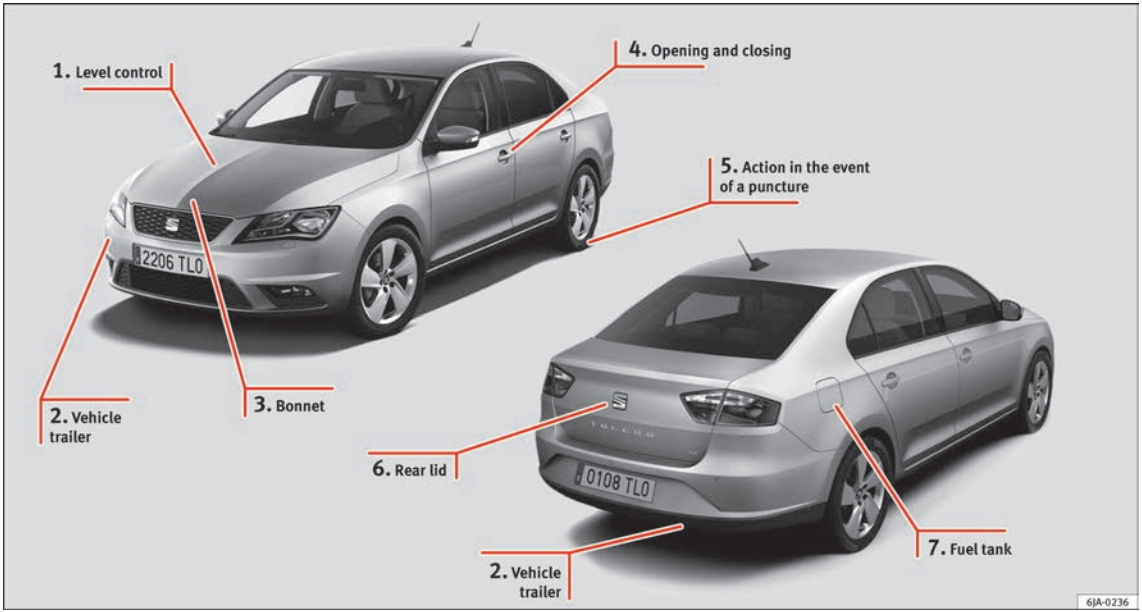
Engine management and exhaust gas purification system 164
Driving tips 166
Driver assistance systems 167
Parking aid 167
Rear Assist “Rear View Camera”* 171
cruise speed (Cruise control)* 174
Monitoring system Front Assist* 176
Start-Stop System* 181
Tiredness detection (break recommendation)* 182
Towing bracket device 184
Driving with a trailer 184
Towing bracket device for trailer 186

Advice 192
Care and maintenance 192
Accessories and modifications to the vehicle 192
Care and cleaning 193
Checking and refilling levels 199
Fuel 199
Engine compartment 202
Engine oil 205
Coolant 208
Brake fluid 209
Windscreen washer 210
Battery 211
Wheels and tyres 215
Wheels 215
Spare wheel 218
Tyre monitoring systems 219
Winter service 220

Technical data 221
Technical specifications 221
Important information 221
Information on fuel consumption 222
Driving with a trailer 223
Wheels 224
Engine data 225
Dimensions 231

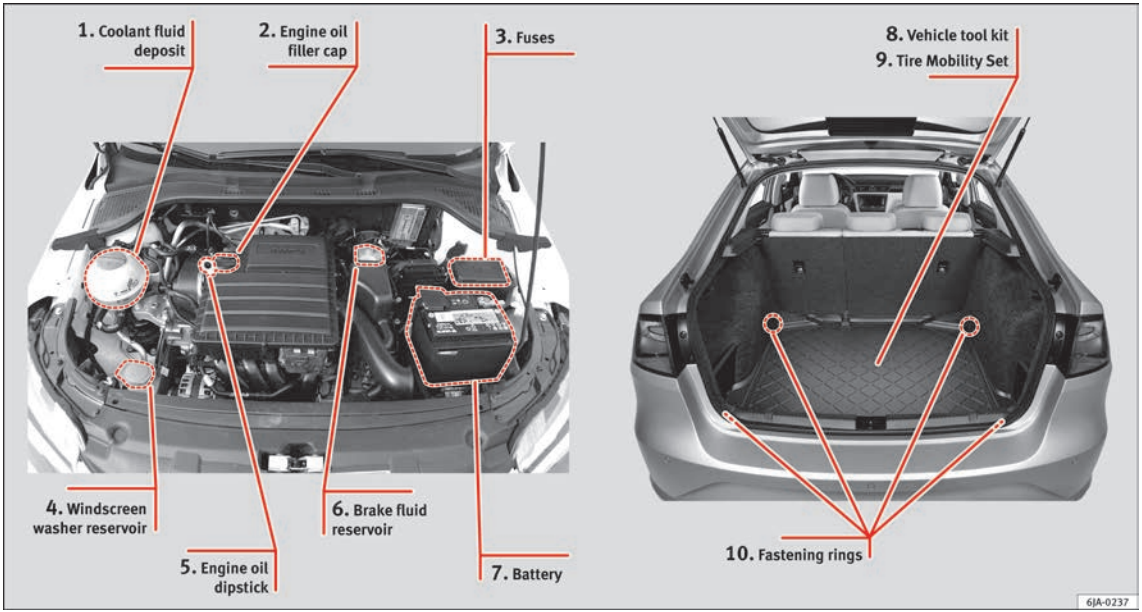
Index 233

Exterior view



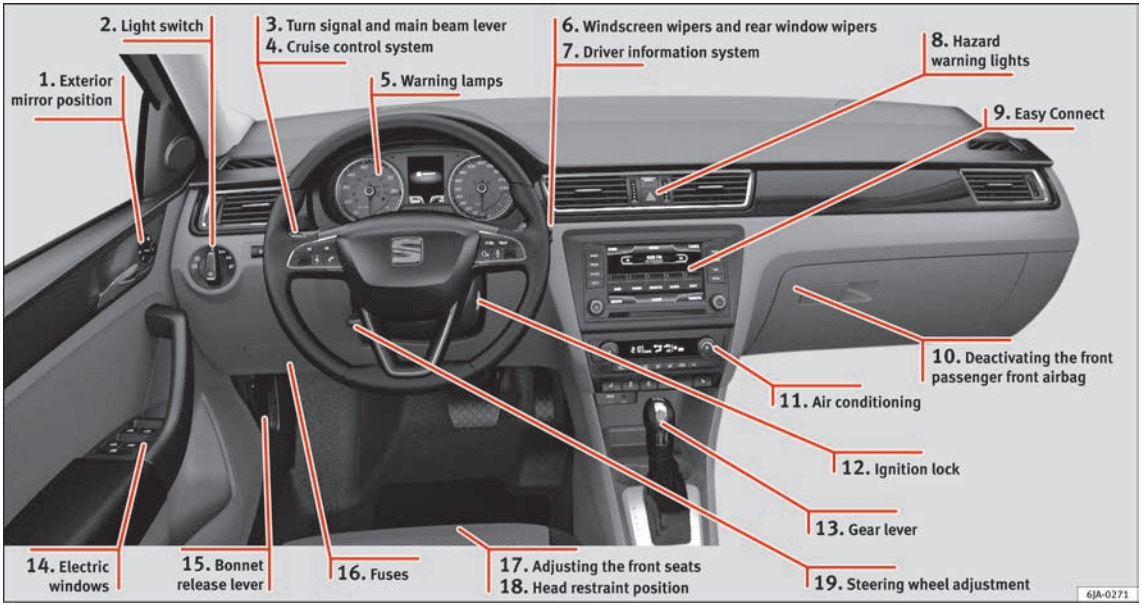
1 ››› page 39
2 ››› page 50
3 ››› page 11
4 ››› page 9
5 ››› page 44
6 ››› page 10
7 ››› page 39

Exterior view



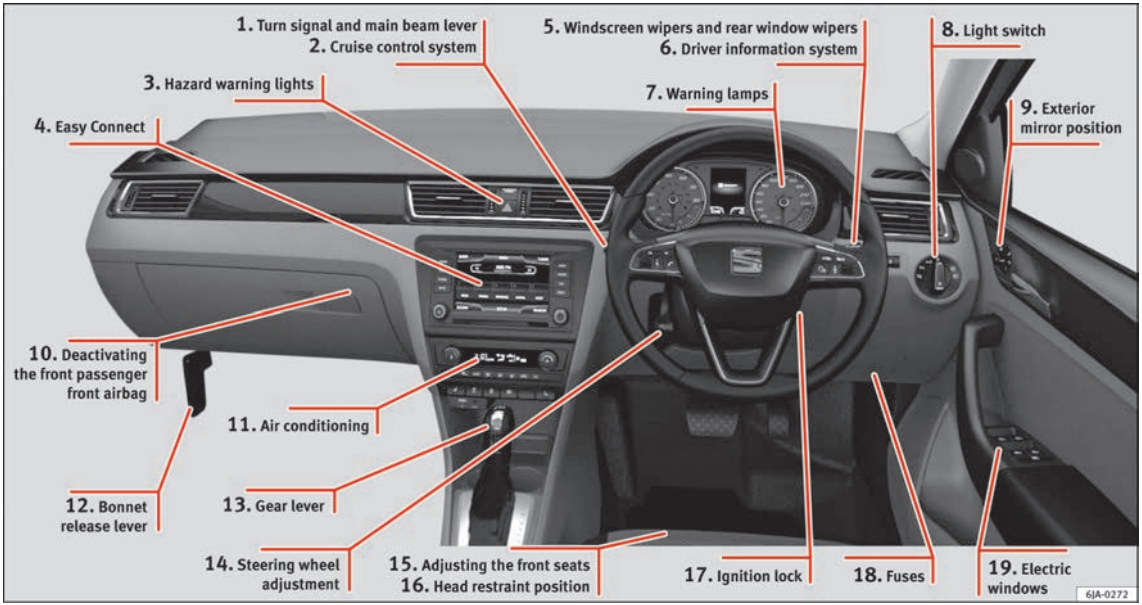
1 »» page 40
2 »» page 40
3 »» page 43
4 »» page 41
5 »» page 40
6 »» page 41
7 »» page 41
8 »» page 75
9 »» page 45
10 »» page 137

Interior view (left-hand drive)



1 ››› page 13	5 ››› page 32	9 ››› page 21	13 ››› page 34	17 ››› page 11
2 ››› page 18	6 ››› page 20	10 ››› page 14	14 ››› page 11	18 ››› page 12
3 ››› page 19	7 ››› page 23	11 ››› page 36	15 ››› page 11	19 ››› page 13
4 ››› page 31	8 ››› page 19	12 ››› page 18	16 ››› page 43	

Interior view (right-hand drive)



(1) ››› page 19
(2) ››› page 31
(3) ››› page 19
(4) ››› page 21
(5) ››› page 20
(6) ››› page 23
(7) ››› page 32
(8) ››› page 18
(9) ››› page 13
(10) ››› page 14
(11) ››› page 36
(12) ››› page 11
(13) ››› page 34
(14) ››› page 13
(15) ››› page 11
(16) ››› page 12
(17) ››› page 18
(18) ››› page 43
(19) ››› page 11

How it works

Unlocking and locking

Doors

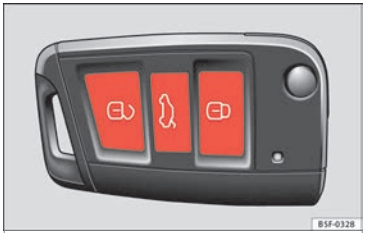


Fig. 1 Remote control key: buttons.

Fig. 2 Centre console: central locking switch.

Locking and unlocking the vehicle using the key

- Locking: press the 🔒 ››› **Fig. 1** button.
- Unlocking: press the 🔓 ››› **Fig. 1** button.
- Unlocking the rear lid: press the ››› **Fig. 1** button until all the turn signals on the vehicle briefly light up.

Locking and unlocking with the central locking switch

- Locking: press the 🔒 ››› **Fig. 2** button. The warning lamp on the button will light up. None of the doors can be opened from the outside. The doors can be opened from the inside by pulling the inside door handle.
- Unlocking: press the 🔓 ››› **Fig. 2** button. The warning lamp on the button will switch off.

››› ⚠ in Unlocking and locking the vehicle on page 105

››› page 104

SOS ››› page 9, ››› page 10

Unlocking and locking the driver's door

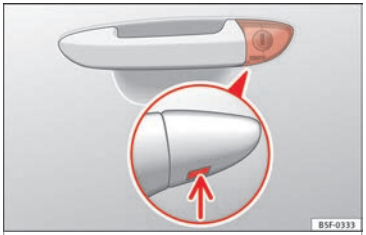


Fig. 3 Driver door lever: hidden lock cylinder.

If the central locking system should fail to operate, the driver door can still be locked and unlocked by turning the key in the lock.

- Unfold the vehicle key shaft.
- Insert the key shaft into the lower opening in the cover on the driver door handle from below ››› **Fig. 3** (arrow) then remove the cover upwards.
- Insert the key blade into the lock cylinder to unlock or lock the vehicle.

Special Characteristics

- The anti-theft alarm will remain active when vehicles are unlocked. However, it is not triggered ››› **page 107**. »

- After the driver door is opened, you have 15 seconds to switch on the ignition. Once this time has elapsed, the alarm is triggered.
- Switch the ignition on. The electronic immobilizer recognises a valid vehicle key and deactivates the anti-theft alarm system.

Note

The anti-theft alarm is not activated when the vehicle is locked manually using the key shaft »» page 107.

Locking manually

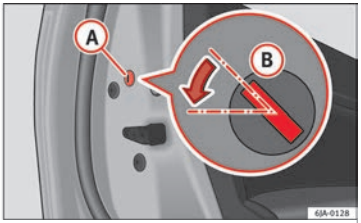


Fig. 4 Rear door: manual locking

On the front of a door with no lock cylinder there is an emergency locking device that is only visible when the door is open.

Locking

- Remove the cap (A) »» **Fig. 4**.
- Insert the key in the slot (B) and turn it in the direction of the arrow until horizontal (on the other direction on the right-hand door).
- Replace the cap.

Once the door has been locked, it can no longer be opened from the outside. The door can be opened from the inside by pulling the door handle.

Rear lid

Fig. 5 Rear lid: opening from the outside.

- Opening the rear lid: Pull on the release lever and lift it up »» **Fig. 5**. The rear lid opens automatically.
- Closing the rear lid: Hold it by one of the handles on the interior lining and close it by pushing gently.

»» ⚠ in Rear lid on page 114

»» page 113

SOS »» page 10

Manual release of the rear lid

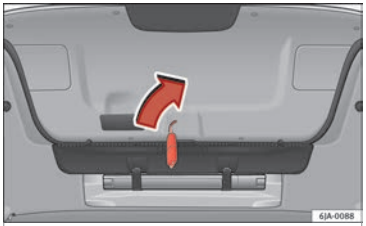


Fig. 6 Luggage compartment: access to manual release.

The rear lid can be unlocked manually from inside in the event of an emergency.

- Insert the key in the opening in the lining of the rear lid and move the key in the direction of the arrow until the lock is released.

Bonnet

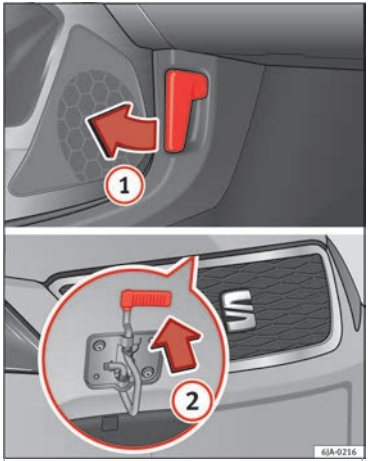


Fig. 7 Unlocking the bonnet.

- Opening the bonnet: Pull the lever under the dashboard ››› **Fig. 7** ①.
- Lifting up the bonnet: press the release catch under the bonnet upwards ››› **Fig. 7** ②. The arrester hook under the bonnet is released.
- The bonnet can be opened. Release the bonnet stay and secure it in the fixture designed for this in the bonnet.

››› ⚠ in Introduction on page 202

››› page 202

Electric windows*

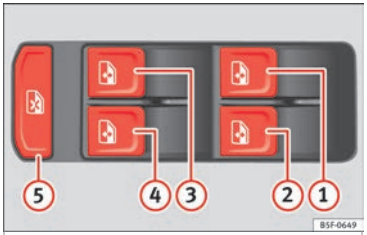


Fig. 8 Detail of the driver door: controls for the windows.

- Opening the window: Press the button.
- Closing the window: Pull the button.

Buttons on the driver door

① Window on the front left door
② Window on the front right door
③ Window on the rear left door
④ Window on the rear right door
⑤ Safety switch for deactivating the electric window buttons in the rear doors.

››› ⚠ in Operation of the electric windows on page 115

››› page 115

Before driving

Manually adjusting the front seats

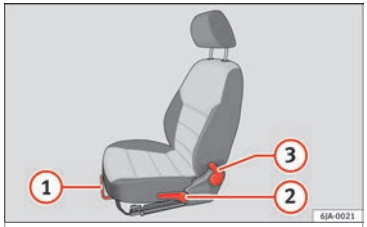


Fig. 9 Front seats: manual seat adjustment.

① Forward/back: pull the lever and move the seat forwards or backwards.
② Raising/lowering: pull/push the lever.
③ Tilting the backrest: pull the lever back.

››› ⚠ in Introduction on page 127

Adjusting the head restraints

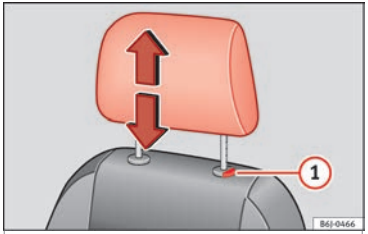


Fig. 10 Front seat: adjustment of the head restraint.

Grab the sides of the head restraints with both hands and push upwards to the desired position. To lower it, repeat the same action, pressing the (1) button on the side.

››› ⚠ in head restraints on page 128

››› page 59, ››› page 128

Adjustment of the seat belt

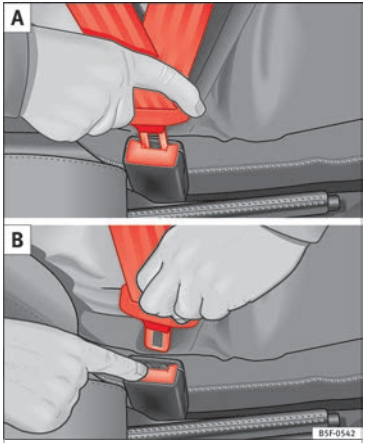


Fig. 11 Positioning and removing the seat belt buckle.

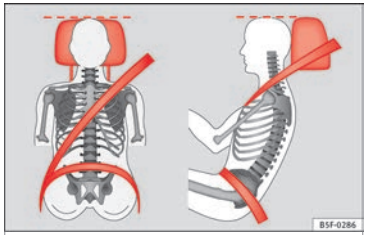


Fig. 12 Correct seat belt and head restraint positions, viewed from front and the side.

To adjust the seat belt around your shoulders, adjust the height of the seats.

The shoulder part of the seat belt should be well centred over it, never over the neck. The seat belt lies flat and fits comfortably on the upper part of the body.

The lap part of the seat belt lies across the pelvis, never across the stomach. The seat belt lies flat and fits comfortably on the pelvis.

››› page 62

››› page 64

Seat belt tensioners

During a collision, the seat belts on the front seats are retracted automatically.

The tensioner can be triggered only once.

››› ⚠ in Service and disposal of belt tensioners on page 66

››› page 65

Adjusting the exterior mirrors

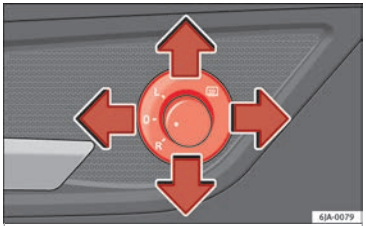


Fig. 13 Detail of the driver door: control for the exterior mirror.

Adjusting the exterior mirrors: Turn the knob to the corresponding position:

L/R Turning the knob to the desired position, adjust the mirrors on the driver side (L, left) and the passenger side (R, right) to the direction desired.

Depending on the equipment fitted on the vehicle, the mirrors may be heated according to the outside temperature.

››› ⚠ in Exterior mirrors on page 126

››› page 126

Adjusting the steering wheel

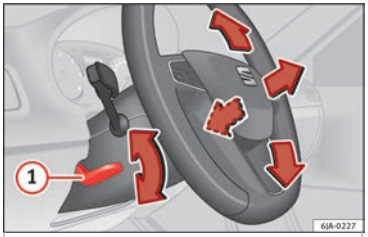


Fig. 14 Lever in the lower left side of the steering column.

Adjusting the position of the steering wheel: Pull the ››› **Fig. 14** (1) lever down, move the steering wheel to the desired position and lift the lever back up until it locks.

››› ⚠ in Adjusting the steering wheel position on page 57

Airbags

Front airbags

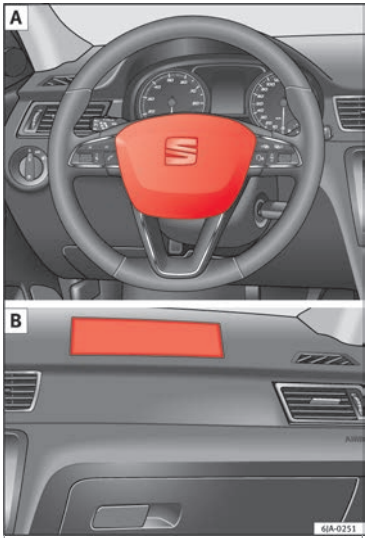


Fig. 15 Driver airbag in the steering wheel and front passenger airbag in the dash panel

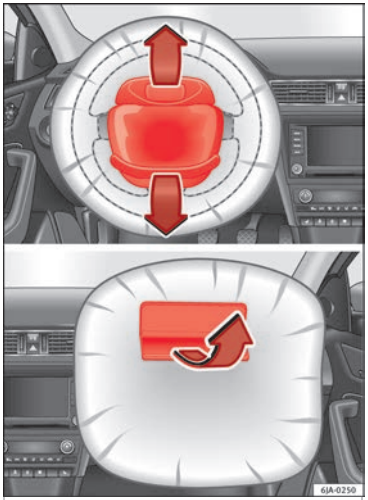


Fig. 16 Airbag covers reacting when the front airbags are triggered.

The front airbag for the driver is located in the steering wheel ››› **Fig. 15** A and the front passenger airbag is located in the dash panel ››› **Fig. 15** B. Airbags are identified by the word “AIRBAG”.

When the driver and front passenger airbags are deployed, the covers remain attached to the steering wheel and dashboard, respectively ››› **Fig. 16**.

In conjunction with the seat belts, the front airbag system gives the driver and the front passenger additional protection for the head and chest in the event of a severe frontal collision.

Their special design allows the controlled escape of the propellant gas when an occupant puts pressure on the bag. Thus, the head and chest are protected by the airbag. After the collision, the airbag deflates sufficiently to allow visibility.

››› ⚠ in Front airbags on page 69

Deactivating the front passenger front airbag

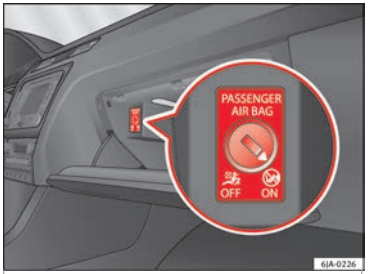


Fig. 17 Front passenger front airbag switch.

To deactivate the front passenger front airbag:

- Open the glove compartment on the front passenger side.
- Insert the key blade into the slot provided in the deactivation switch.
- Approximately ¾ of the length of the key blade remains inserted (the maximum).
- Turn the key blade, changing its position to **OFF**. Do not force it. If you have difficulty, ensure that you have inserted the key as far as it will go.
- Finally, check the control lamp on the instrument panel where it shows **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** the following should appear **OFF**.

››› ⚠ in Front passenger front airbag switch on page 72

››› page 71

Side airbags*

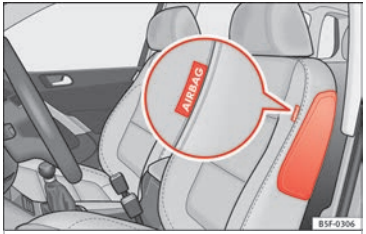


Fig. 18 Side airbag in driver's seat.

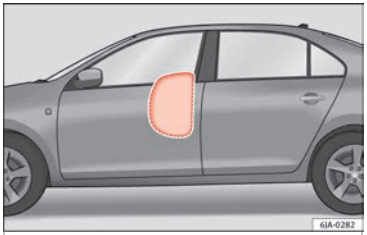


Fig. 19 Illustration of completely inflated side airbag on left side of vehicle.

The side airbags are located in the driver's seat and front passenger seat backrests ››› **Fig. 18**. The locations are identified by the text “AIRBAG” in the upper region of the backrests.

In conjunction with the seat belts, the side airbag system provides additional protection for the upper body in the event of a severe side collision ››› **page 61, The whys and wherefores of seat belts**.

In a side collision, the side airbags reduce the risk of injury to passengers to the areas of the body facing the impact. In addition to the normal protection from the front seat belts, passengers are also held fast in the event of a side collision, and this is how these airbags provide maximum protection.

››› ⚠ in Side airbags* on page 69

Head-protection airbags*

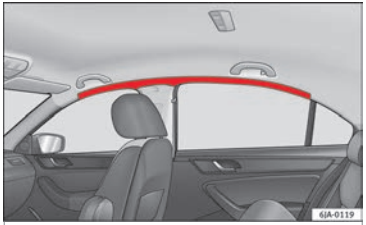


Fig. 20 Location of head-protection airbags.

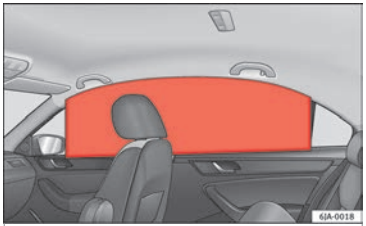


Fig. 21 Deployed head-protection airbags.

The head-protection airbags are located on both sides in the interior above the doors ››› **Fig. 20** and are identified with the text "AIRBAG".

In conjunction with the seat belts, the head-protection airbag system gives the vehicle occupants additional protection for the head and upper body in the event of a severe side collision ››› **page 15**.

››› ⚠ in Curtain airbags* on page 70

Child seats

Important information regarding the front passenger's airbag

Fig. 22 Passenger's side sun visor: airbag sticker.

Fig. 23 On the rear frame of the passenger side door: airbag sticker.

A sticker with important information about the passenger airbag is located on the passenger's sun visor and/or on the passenger side door frame.

››› ⚠ in Important information regarding the front passenger's airbag on page 73

››› page 73

Possible ways to secure child seats

You can secure a child seat to the rear seat or front passenger seat in the following ways:

- Child seats in groups **0 to 3** can be secured with a seat belt.

• Child seats for groups **0, 0+ and 1** can be fastened without seatbelts, using the "ISOFIX" and Top Tether* system, using the "ISOFIX" and Top Tether* securing rings ››› page 17.

Weight group	Seat locations		
	Front passenger[a)]	Rear outer	Rear centre
Group 0 <10 kg	U*	U/L	U
Group 0+ <13 kg	U*	U/L	U
Group I 9-18 kg	U*	U/L	U
Group II/III 15-36 kg	U*	U	U

[a)] Compliance with current national legislation and the manufacturer's instructions is required when using or installing child seats.

U: Suitable for universal approved restraining systems for use in this age category (universal retention systems are those fitted using the adult seat belt).

*: Move the front passenger seat as far back as possible, as high as possible and always disable the airbag.

L: Suitable for retention systems using the "ISOFIX" and Top Tether* anchors.

The systems include the child restraint system mounting with an upper retaining strap (Top Tether) and lower anchoring points on the seat.

››› ⚠ in Safety instructions on page 74

"ISOFIX" and Top Tether child seat mounting system*

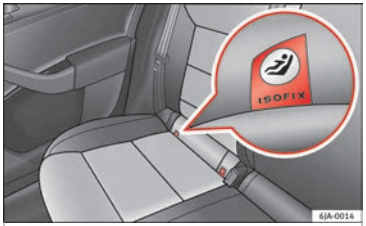


Fig. 24 ISOFIX securing rings.

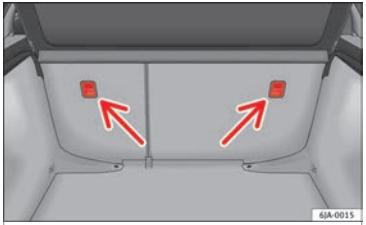


Fig. 25 Top Tether* securing ring.

Child seats with the "ISOFIX" or Top Tether* system can be secured quickly, easily and safely on the rear outer seats.

When removing or fitting the child seat, please be sure to follow the manufacturer's instructions.

• Move the rear seat as far to the rear as it will go.

• Press the child seat onto the "ISOFIX" retaining rings until the child seat can be heard to engage. If the child seat is equipped with Top Tether* anchor points, secure it to the correspondent ring. Observe the manufacturer's instructions.

• Pull on both sides of the child seat to ensure that it is secure.

Two "ISOFIX" retaining rings are fitted on each rear seat. In some vehicles, the rings are secured to the seat frame and, in others, they are secured to the rear floor. Access to »

the “ISOFIX” rings is between the rear seat backrest and the seat cushioning. The Top Tether* rings are located at the rear of the backrests of the rear seats (behind the seat backrest or in the boot).

Child seats with the “ISOFIX” and Top Tether* attachment system are available from Technical Services.

››› ⚠ in Safety instructions on page 74

Starting the vehicle

Ignition lock

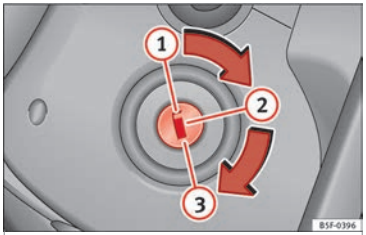


Fig. 26 Ignition key positions.

Switch ignition on: Place the key in the ignition and start the engine.

Locking and unlocking the steering wheel

- Engaging the steering wheel lock: Remove the key from the ignition and turn the wheel until it locks. In vehicles with an automatic gearbox, the gear lever must be in the **P** position in order to remove the key. If necessary, press the locking key on the selector lever and release it again.
- Unlocking the steering wheel: Put the key into the ignition and turn it at the same time as the steering wheel in the direction indicated by the arrow. If it is not possible to turn the steering wheel, it may be because it is locked.

Turning on/switching off the ignition, glow plugs reheating

- Switch ignition on: Turn the key to the (2) position.
- Switch ignition off. Turn the key to the (1) position.
- Diesel vehicles ➰: The glow plugs reheat when the ignition is switched on

Starting the engine

- Manual gearbox: press the clutch pedal all the way down and move the gearbox lever into neutral.
- Automatic gearbox: Press the brake pedal and move the selector lever to the **P** position or into **N**.
- Turn the key to the (3) position. The key automatically returns to the (2) position. Do not press the accelerator.

Start-Stop System*

When you stop and release the clutch pedal, the Start-Stop system* turns off the engine. The ignition remains switched on.

››› ⚠ in Introduction on page 149

››› page 149

Lights and visibility

Light switch

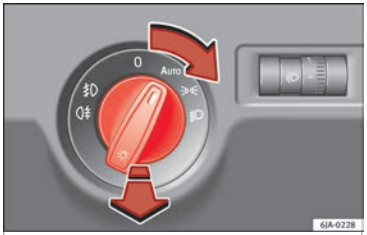


Fig. 27 Dash panel: light control.

Turn the switch to the required position ››› Fig. 27.

Symbol	Ignition switched off	Ignition is switched on
0	Fog lights, dipped beam and side lights off.	Light off or daytime driving light on.
AUTO	The “Coming home” and “Leaving home” guide lights may be switched on.	Automatic control of dipped beam and daytime running light.
	Side light on.	
	Dipped beam headlight off	Dipped beam switched on.

Front fog lights: move the switch to the first position, from positions **AUTO**, or .

Rear fog light: move the switch completely from positions **AUTO**, or .

Switching off fog lights: Push the switch or turn it to the **0** position.

››› in Introduction on page 116

››› page 116

Turn signal and main beam lever

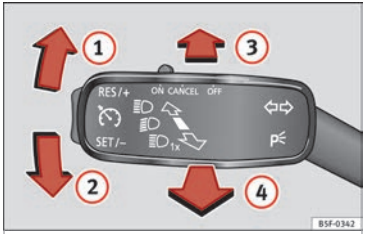


Fig. 28 Turn signal and main beam lever

More the lever to the required position:

1. Right turn signal: Right-hand parking light (ignition switched off).
2. Left turn signal: Left-hand parking light (ignition switched off).
3. Main beam switched on: Control lamp lit up on the instrument panel.
4. Headlight flasher: lit up when the lever is pushed. Control lamp lit up.

Lever all the way down to switch it off.

››› page 118

Hazard warning lights

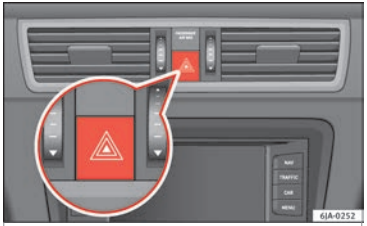


Fig. 29 Dash panel: switch for hazard warning lights.

Switched on, for example:

- When approaching a traffic jam
- In an emergency
- The vehicle has broken down
- When towing or being towed

››› page 121

Interior lights

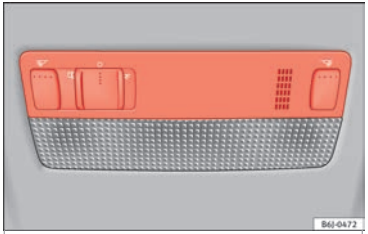


Fig. 30 Detail of headliner: version 1

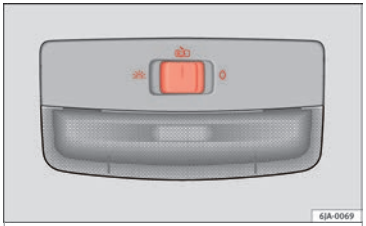


Fig. 31 Detail of headliner: version 2

Knob	Function
0	Switches interior lights off.
	Switches interior lights on.
	Switches door contact control on (central position). The interior lights come on automatically when the vehicle is unlocked, a door is opened or the key is removed from the ignition. The lights go off a few seconds after all the doors are closed, the vehicle is locked or the ignition is switched on.
	Turning the reading light on and off

››› page 122

Windscreen wipers and window wiper blade

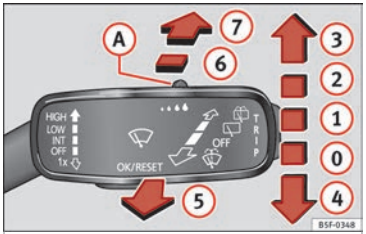


Fig. 32 Operating the windscreen wiper and rear wiper

More the lever to the required position:		
0	OFF	Windscreen wiper off.
1		Windscreen wipers interval wipe. Using the control ››› Fig. 32 (A) adjust the interval (vehicles without rain sensor), or the sensitivity of the rain sensor.
2	LOW	Slow wipe.
3	HIGH	Continuous wipe.
4	1x	Short wipe. Brief press, short clean. Hold the lever down for more time to increase the wipe frequency.
5		Automatic wipe. The windscreen washer function is activated by pushing the lever forwards, and simultaneously the windscreen wipers start.
6		Interval wipe for rear window. The wiper will wipe the window approximately every six seconds.
7		The rear window wash function is activated by pressing the lever, and the rear wiper starts simultaneously.

››› ⚠ in Introduction on page 124

››› page 124

SOS ››› page 53

Easy Connect

CAR menu settings (Setup)

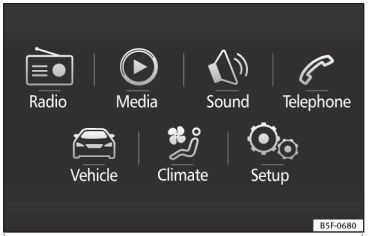


Fig. 33 Easy Connect: Main menu

Fig. 34 Easy Connect: CAR menu

To select the settings menus, press the Easy Connect CAR button and the Setup function button.

The actual number of menus available and the name of the various options in these menus will depend on the vehicle's electronics and equipment.

- Switch the ignition on.
- If the Infotainment System is off, switch it on.
- Press the system's MENU button and then the system's CAR ››› **Fig. 33** button or CAR button to go to the **CAR** menu ››› **Fig. 34**.
- Press the function button Setup to open the menu **Vehicle settings** ››› **Fig. 34**.
- To select a function in the menu, press the desired button.

When you press the menu button, the last selected menu will always be displayed.

When the function button check box is activated ☑, the function is active.

Any changes made using the settings menus are automatically saved on closing the BACK menus.

Menu	Submenu	Possible setting	Description
ESC system	–	Activation of the Electronic Stability Programme (ESC)	››› page 154
Tyres	Tyre pressure monitoring	Tyre pressure storing (Calibration)	››› page 219
	Winter tyres	Activation and deactivation of the speed warning. Setting the speed warning value	››› page 220

Menu	Submenu	Possible setting	Description
Driver assistance	Front Assist (ambient traffic monitoring system)	Activation/deactivation: monitoring system, advance warning, distance warning display	››› page 176
	City emergency braking function	Activation/deactivation of the City emergency braking function.	››› page 180
	Fatigue detection	Activation/deactivation	››› page 182
Parking and manoeuvring	ParkPilot	Automatically activate, front volume, front sound settings, rear volume, rear sound settings, adjust volume	››› page 167
Vehicle lights	Vehicle interior lighting	Instrument and switch lighting, footrest lighting	››› page 122
	Coming home/Leaving home function	Start time for “Coming home” function, start time for “Leaving home” function	››› page 121
	Daytime driving light	Activation/deactivation	››› page 118
Mirrors/windscreen wipers	Mirrors	Synchronised regulation, lower the rear-view mirror when reversing, fold in after parking	››› page 126
	Windscreen wipers	Automatic windscreen wipers, wipe when reversing	››› page 124
Opening and closing	Radio-operated remote control	Convenience open function	››› page 104
	Central locking system	Unlocking doors, automatic locking/unlocking, audible confirmation	››› page 107
Multifunction display	–	Current consumption, average consumption, volume to fill up, convenience consumers, ECOAdvice, travelling time, distance travelled, digital speed display, average speed, speeding warning, oil temperature, coolant temperature, restore data “from start”, restore data “total calculation”	››› page 23
Date and time	–	Time source, set the time, automatic summer time (DST) setting, select time zone, time format, set the date, date format	–
Measurement units	–	Distance, speed, temperature, volume, consumption	–
Service	–	Chassis number, date of next SEAT service inspection, date of next oil change service	››› page 30
Factory settings	–	All settings can be reset: driver assistance, parking and manoeuvring, lights, rear view mirrors and windscreen wipers, opening and closing, multi-function display	–

››› ⚠ in CAR menu (Setup) on page 99

››› page 99

Driver information system

Introduction

With the ignition switched on, it is possible to read the different functions of the display by scrolling through the menus.

In vehicles with multifunction steering wheel, the multifunction display can only be operated with the steering wheel buttons.

The number of menus displayed on the instrument panel will vary according to the vehicle electronics and equipment.

A specialised workshop will be able to programme or modify additional functions, according to the vehicle equipment. SEAT recommends visiting a SEAT Official Service.

Some menu options can only be read when the vehicle is at a standstill.

As long as a priority 1 warning is displayed, it will not be possible to read the menus. Some warning messages can be confirmed and made to disappear with the windscreen wiper lever button or the multifunction steering wheel button.

The information system also provides the following information and displays (depending on the vehicle's equipment):

Driving data ››› page 26
- Vehicle status
- MFD from departure
- MFD from refuelling
- MFD total calculation

Assist systems ››› table on page 24
- Reverse (optional)

Navigation ››› Booklet Navigation system

Audio ››› Booklet Radio or ››› Booklet Navigation system

Telephone ››› Booklet Radio or ››› Booklet Navigation system

Vehicle ››› table on page 24

⚠ WARNING

Any distraction may lead to an accident, with the risk of injury.

- **Do not operate the instrument panel controls when driving.**

Operating the instrument panel menus

Fig. 35 Windscreen wiper lever: control buttons.

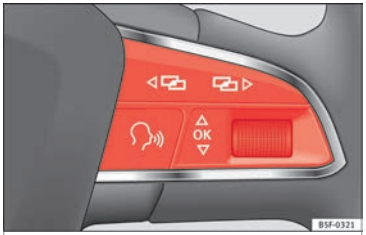


Fig. 36 Right side of multifunction steering wheel: control buttons.

The driver information system is controlled with the multifunction steering wheel buttons ››› **Fig. 36** or with the windscreen wiper lever ››› **Fig. 35** (if the vehicle is not equipped with multifunction steering wheel). »

Enabling the main menu

- Switch the ignition on.
- If a message or vehicle pictogram appears, press button ››› Fig. 35 (1) on the windscreen wiper lever or button (OK) on the multifunction steering wheel ››› Fig. 36.
- *If managed from the windscreen wiper lever:* to display the main screen ››› page 24 or to return to the main menu from another menu hold down the rocker button ››› Fig. 35 (2).
- *If managed from the multifunction steering wheel:* the main menu list is not displayed. To go from point to point in the main menu, press button (◁) or (▷) several times ››› Fig. 36.

Select a submenu

- Press the rocker switch ››› Fig. 35 (2) on the windscreen wiper lever up or down or turn the thumbwheel of the multifunction steering wheel ››› Fig. 36 until the desired option appears marked on the menu.
- The selected option is displayed between two horizontal lines. In addition, a triangle is displayed on the right: ◀
- To consult the submenu option, press button ››› Fig. 35 (1) on the windscreen wiper lever or button (OK) on the multifunction steering wheel ››› Fig. 36.

Making changes according to the menu

- With the rocker switch on the windscreen wiper lever or the thumbwheel of the multifunction steering wheel, make the desired changes. To increase or decrease the values more quickly, turn the thumbwheel faster.
- Mark or confirm the selection with button ››› Fig. 35 (1) on the windscreen wiper lever or button (OK) on the multifunction steering wheel ››› Fig. 36.

Menu

Menu	Function
Driving data	Information and possible configurations of the multifunction display (MFD) ››› page 26, ››› page 99.
Assist systems	Information and possible configurations of the driver assistance systems ››› page 99.
Navigation	Information instructions from the activated navigation system: when a route guidance is activated, the turning arrows and proximity bars are displayed. The appearance is similar to the Easy Connect system. If route guidance is not activated, the direction of travel (compass) and the name of the street along which you are driving are shown ››› Booklet Navigation system.
Audio	Station display on the radio. Track name on the CD. Track name in Media mode ››› Booklet Radio or ››› Booklet Navigation system.
Telephone	Information and possible configurations of the mobile phone preinstallation ››› Booklet Radio or ››› Booklet Navigation system.
Lap timer*	In a racing circuit, measurement and memorisation of lap times by the vehicle and comparison with previously measured best times ››› page 28.
Vehicle status	Display of the current warning or information texts and other system components, depending on the equipment ››› page 99.

Outside temperature display

When the outside temperature is below +4°C (+39°F), the symbol “ice crystal” (warning of risk of freezing) is also displayed. At first, this symbol flashes and then it remains lit until the outside temperature rises above +6°C (+43°F) ››› ⚠ in Indications on the display on page 96.

When the vehicle is at a standstill or when travelling at very low speeds, the temperature displayed may be higher than the true

outside temperature as a result of the heat produced by the engine.

The temperatures measured range from -40°C to +50°C (-40°F to +122°F).

Gear-change indicator

Fig. 37 Instrument panel: gear-change indicator (manual gearbox).

A gear change will be recommended if the gear you are in is not the most economical choice. If no gear-change is recommended, it means that you are already in the most economical gear.

Vehicles with a manual gearbox

The following display symbols ››› **Fig. 37** mean:

- ▸ **Change to a higher gear**: the suggested gear appears to the **right** of the current gear when a **higher gear is recommended**.
- ◂ **Change to a lower gear**: the suggested gear appears to the **left** of the current gear when a **lower gear is recommended**.

The gear recommendation may occasionally skip a gear (2nd ▸ 4th).

Vehicles with an automatic gearbox*

The display is only visible in tiptronic mode ››› page 159.

The following display symbols mean:

- ↑ **Shifting up a gear**
- ↓ **Shifting down a gear**

CAUTION

The gear-change indicator is intended to help save fuel, but it is not intended to recommend the right gear for all driving situations. In certain situations, only the driver can choose the correct gear (for instance when overtaking, driving up a steep gradient or towing a trailer).

Note

The display disappears from the instrument panel when you press the clutch pedal.

Bonnet, rear lid and doors open

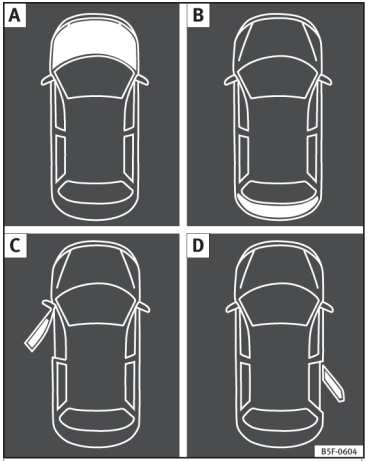


Fig. 38 A: bonnet open; B: rear lid open; C: front left door open; D: rear right door open (5-door vehicles only).

When the ignition is switched on or when driving, the bonnet, rear lid or doors that are open will be indicated on the instrument panel display, and, as applicable, this will be indicated audibly. The display may vary according to the type of instrument panel fitted. »

Illustration	Key to ››› Fig. 38
A	**Do not continue driving!** The bonnet is open or is not properly closed ››› page 202.
B	**Do not continue driving!** The rear lid is open or is not properly closed ››› page 10.
C, D	**Do not continue driving!** A vehicle door is open or is not properly closed ››› page 107.

Warning and information messages

The system runs a check on certain components and functions when the ignition is switched on and while the vehicle is moving. Faults in the operation are displayed on the screen using red and yellow symbols and messages on the instrument panel display (››› page 32, ››› page 32) and, in some cases, with audible warnings. The display may vary according to the type of instrument panel fitted.

Priority 1 warning (red symbols)
Symbol flashing or lit; partly combined with audible warnings. **Stop the vehicle!** It is dangerous ››› ⚠ in Warning and control lamps on page 98 ! Check the function that is faulty and repair it. If necessary, request assistance from specialised personnel.

Priority 2 warning (yellow symbols)
Symbol flashing or lit; partly combined with audible warnings. A faulty function, or fluids which are below the correct levels may cause damage to the vehicle! ››› ❗ in Warning and control lamps on page 99 Check the faulty function as soon as possible. If necessary, request assistance from specialised personnel.

Informative text
Information relating to different vehicle processes.

Submenu Assist systems

Assist systems menu	Function
Front Assist	Switching the monitoring system on and off ››› page 176.
Fatigue detection*	Switching the fatigue detection on or off (pause recommendation) ››› page 182.

Driving data

Memory

The MFD (multifunction display) shows different values for the journey and the consumption.

Changing between display modes on the MFD

- *In vehicles without multifunction steering wheel:* Press the rocker switch TRIP on the windscreen wiper lever ››› Fig. 35.
- *Vehicles with a multifunction steering wheel:* turn the thumbwheel ››› Fig. 36.

Multifunction display memory

The multifunction display is equipped with three memories that work automatically: MFD from departure, MFD from refuelling and MFD total calculation. On the screen display, you can read which memory is currently displayed.

- Toggle between memories with the ignition on and the memory displayed: Press the OK/RESET button on the windscreen wiper lever or the OK button of the multifunction steering wheel.

Menu	Function
MFD from departure	Display and storage of the values for the journey and the consumption from when the ignition is switched on to when it is switched off. If the journey is continued in less than 2 hours after the ignition is switched off, the new data is added to the data already stored in the memory. The memory will automatically be deleted if the journey is interrupted for more than 2 hours.
MFD from refuelling	Display and storage of the values for the journey and the consumption. By refuelling, the memory will be erased automatically.
MFD total calculation	The memory records the values for a specific number of partial trips, up to a total of 19 hours and 59 minutes or 99 hours and 59 minutes, or 1999.9 km or 9999 km, depending on the model of instrument panel. On reaching either of these limits[a], the memory is automatically erased and starts to count from 0 again.

[a] It varies according to the instrument panel version.

Erasing a memory manually

- Select the memory that you wish to erase.
- Hold the OK/RESET button of the multifunction steering wheel or the OK button of the multifunction wheel pressed down for about 2 seconds.

Personalising the displays

In the Easy Connect system you can adjust which of the possible displays of the MFD can be shown on the instrument panel display with the button CAR and the function button Setup »» page 99.

Data summary

Menu	Function
Current fuel consumption	The current fuel consumption display operates throughout the journey, in litres/100 km; and with the engine running and the vehicle stopped, in litres/hour.
Average fuel consumption	After turning on the ignition, average fuel consumption in litres/100 km will be displayed after travelling about 100 metres. Otherwise horizontal lines are displayed. The value shown is updated approximately every 5 seconds. **ACT®***: Depending on the equipment, number of active cylinders.
Operating range	Approximate distance in km that can still be travelled with the fuel remaining in the tank, assuming the same style of driving is maintained. This is calculated using the current fuel consumption.
Travelling time	This indicates the hours (h) and minutes (min) since the ignition was switched on.
Distance covered	Distance covered in km (m) after switching on the ignition.
Average speed	The average speed will be shown after a distance of about 100 metres has been travelled. Otherwise horizontal lines are displayed. The value shown is updated approximately every 5 seconds.
Digital display of speed	Current speed displayed in digital format.
Speed warning at --- km/h or Speed warning at --- mph	If the stored speed is exceeded (between 30 - 250 km/h, or 19 - 155 mph), an audible warning is given together with a visual warning.
Oil temperature	Updated engine oil temperature digital display
Coolant temperature gauge	Digital display of the current temperature of the liquid coolant.

Storing a speed with the speed warning

- Select the display **Speed warning at --- km/h (--- mph)** »

- Press the button OK/RESET on the windscreen wiper lever or the button OK on the multifunction steering wheel to store the current speed and activate the warning.
- To switch system on: adjust to the desired speed within 5 seconds using the rocker switch TRIP on the windscreen wiper lever or by turning the thumbwheel on the multifunction steering wheel. Next, press the button OK/RESET or OK again or wait several seconds. The speed is stored and the warning activated.
- To switch system off: press the button OK/RESET or OK. The stored speed is deleted.

Engine oil temperature display

Vehicles without multifunction steering wheel

- Press the rocker switch ››› Fig. 35 ② until the main menu appears. Enter into **Driving data**. With the button ② move to the oil temperature gauge.

Vehicles with multifunction steering wheel

- Enter the submenu **Driving data** and turn the thumbwheel until the oil temperature display appears.

The engine reaches its operating temperature when in normal driving conditions, the oil temperature is between **80°C (180°F)** and **120°C (250°F)**. If the engine is required to work hard and the outside temperature is high, the engine oil temperature can increase. This does not present any problem as long as the warning lamps ››› table on page 33 or ››› table on page 33 do not appear on the display.

Additional electrical appliances

- *Operation with the windscreen wiper lever*:* Press the rocker switch ››› Fig. 35 ② until the main menu appears. Enter into the section **Driving data**. With the rocker switch, move to the display **Convenience consumers**.
- *Operation with the multi-function steering wheel*:* Move with the buttons ① or ② to **Driving data** and enter with **OK**. Turn the thumbwheel to the right until the **Convenience consumers** display appears.

In addition, a scale will inform you of the current sum of all the additional appliances.

Saving tips

Tips on how to save fuel will be displayed in conditions that increase fuel consumption. Follow them to reduce consumption. The indications appear automatically only with the efficiency programme. After a time, the tips will disappear automatically.

If you wish to hide a saving tip immediately after it appears, press any button on the windscreen wiper lever*/multifunction steering wheel*.

Note

- **If you hide a saving tip, it will reappear after you switch the ignition on again.**
- **The saving tips do not appear in all situations, but rather with a large separation of time.**

Timer*

You can access the timer via the selection menu ››› page 24.

It allows you to manually time lap times on a racing circuit, memorise them and compare them to the vehicle's previous best times.

The following menus can be displayed:

- **Stop**
- **Lap**
- **Pause**
- **Partial time**
- **Statistics**

Change from one menu to another

- *Vehicles without multifunction steering wheel:* press the rocker switch TRIP in the windscreen wiper lever.
- *Vehicles with multifunction steering wheel:* press △ or ▽.

Menu "Stop"	
Start	The timer starts. If there are existing laps and they are included in the statistics, it will begin with the number of laps in question. It is only possible to begin with a new first lap if the statistics have been reset first in the **Statistics** menu.
Since start	The timer begins when the vehicle sets off. If the vehicle is already moving, the timer begins once the vehicle has stopped.
Statistics	The **Statistics** menu is displayed on the screen.

Menu "Lap"	
New lap	The timer of the current lap stops and a new lap starts immediately. The time for the lap you have just completed is included in the statistics.
Partial time	For about 5 seconds a partial time is displayed. The timer continues in parallel.
Stop	The current lap timer will be interrupted. The lap does not end. The **Pause** menu is displayed.

Menu "Pause"	
Continue	The interrupted timer continues.
New lap	A new timer starts. The halted lap ends and is included in the statistics.
Interr. lap	The timer of the current lap ends and is cancelled. It is not included in the statistics.
End	The current timer ends. The lap is included in the statistics.

Menu "Partial time"	
Partial time	For about 5 seconds a partial time is displayed. The timer continues in parallel.
New lap	The timer of the current lap stops and a new lap starts immediately. The time for the lap you have just completed is included in the statistics.
Stop	The current lap timer will be interrupted. The lap does not end. The **Pause** menu is displayed.

Menu "Long-term Statistics"	
	View of the latest lap times: – total time – best lap time – worst lap time – average lap duration A maximum of 10 laps is possible, and a total duration of 99 hours, 59 minutes and 59 seconds. If one of the 2 limits is reached, you will have to reset the statistics in order to begin a new timer.
Back	This returns to the previous menu.
Resetting to zero	All the memorised statistical data are reset.

⚠ WARNING

Do your best to avoid handling the timer while driving.

- **Only set the timer or consult statistics when the vehicle is stationary.**
- **While driving, do not handle the timer in complicated driving situations.**

Speed warning device

The speed warning device warns the driver when they have exceeded the pre-set speed limit by 3 km/h (2 mph). An audible warning signal sounds, and the warning lamp and »

the driver message **Speed limit exceeded!** will be displayed simultaneously on the instrument panel. The warning lamp switches off when reducing speed below the stored maximum limit.

Speed warning programming is recommended if you wish to be reminded of a maximum speed, such as when travelling in a country with different speed limits or for a maximum speed for winter tyres.

Setting speed limit warning

You can use the radio or the Easy Connect* to set, alter or cancel the speed limit warning.

- *Vehicles with radio*: press the button SETUP › control button ⇕ **Driver Assistant** › **Speed warning**.
- *Vehicles with Easy Connect*: press the button **Systems** or else **Vehicle systems** › **Driver assistant** › **Speed warning**.

The warning limit can be set from 30 to 240 km/h (20 to 149 mph). The adjustment is made at 10 km/h (5 mph) intervals.

Note

- **Please bear in mind that, even with the speed warning function, it is still important to keep an eye on the vehicle speed with the speedometer and to observe the legal speed limits.**
- **The speed limit warning function in the version for some countries warns you at a speed of 120 km/h (75 mph). This is a factory-set speed limit.**

Service intervals

The service interval indication appears on the instrument panel display ››› Fig. 110 3.

SEAT distinguishes between services *with* engine oil change (e.g. Oil change service) and services *without* engine oil change (e.g. Inspection).

In vehicles with **Services established by time or mileage**, the service intervals are already pre-defined.

In vehicles with **LongLife Service**, the intervals are determined individually. Thanks to technological progress, maintenance work has been greatly reduced. Because of the technology used by SEAT, with this service you only need to change the oil when the vehicle so requires. To calculate this change (max. 2 years), the vehicle's conditions of use and individual driving styles are considered. The advance warning first appears 20 days before the date established for the corresponding service. The kilometres (miles) remaining until the next service are always rounded up to the nearest 100 km (miles) and the time is given in complete days. The current service message cannot be viewed until 500 km after the last service. Prior to this, only lines are visible on the display.

Inspection reminder

When the Service date is approaching, when the ignition is switched on a **Service reminder** is displayed.

Vehicles without text messages: a spanner will be displayed on the instrument panel plus an indication in **km**.

The kilometres indicated are the maximum number of kilometres that can be travelled until the next service. After a few seconds, the display mode changes. A clock symbol appears and the number of days until the next service is due.

Vehicles with text messages: **Service in --- km or --- days** will be shown on the instrument panel display.

Service due

When **the service date is due**, an audible warning is given when the ignition is switched on and the spanner displayed on the screen flashes for a few seconds .

Vehicles with text messages: **Service now** will be shown on the instrument panel display.

Reading a service notification

With the ignition switched on, the engine off and the vehicle at a standstill, the current **service notification** can be read:

Press and hold the button (4) for more than 5 seconds to consult the service message.

When the **service date has passed**, a minus sign is displayed in front of the number of kilometres or days.

Vehicles with text messages: **Service since --- km or --- days ago** will be shown on the display.

The time can also be set via the CAR key and Setup function button in the Easy Connect system ››› page 99.

Resetting service interval display

If the service was not carried out by a SEAT dealership, the display can be reset as follows:

- Switch off the ignition, press and hold button ››› Fig. 110 (4).
- Switch ignition back on.
- Release the (4) ››› Fig. 110 button and press it again for the next 20 seconds.

Note

- **The service message disappears after a few seconds, when the engine is started or when OK/RESET is pressed on the windscreen wiper lever, or OK on the multifunction steering wheel.**
- **In vehicles with the LongLife system in which the battery has been disconnected for a long period of time, it is not possible to calculate the date of the next service. Therefore the service interval display may not be correct. In this case, bear in mind the maximum service intervals permitted in the ››› Booklet Maintenance Programme.**

Cruise control

Operating the cruise control system (CCS)*

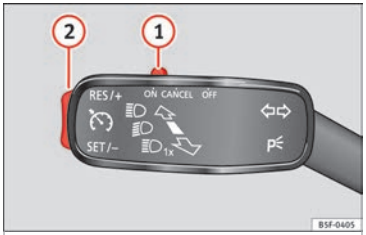


Fig. 39 On the left of the steering column: switches and controls for operating the CCS

- Switching on the CCS: Move switch ››› Fig. 39 (1) to **ON**. The system is on. If no speed has been programmed, the system will not control it.
- Activating the CCS: Press button ››› Fig. 39 (2) in the **SET/–** area. The current speed is memorised and controlled.
- Temporarily switching off the CCS: Move switch ››› Fig. 39 (1) to **CANCEL** or push the brake. The cruise control system is switched off temporarily.
- Reactivating the CCS: Press button ››› Fig. 39 (2) in **RES/+**. The memorised speed is saved and controlled again.
- Increasing stored speed during CCS regulation: press button (2) in **RES/+**. The vehicle accelerates until the new stored speed.
- Reducing stored speed during CCS regulation: press button (2) in **SET/–** to lower the speed by 1 km/h (1 mph). Speed is reduced until reaching the new stored speed.
- Switching off the CCS: Move switch ››› Fig. 39 (1) to **OFF**. The system is disconnected and the memorised speed is deleted.

››› ⚠ in Introduction on page 174

››› page 174

Warning lamps

On the instrument panel

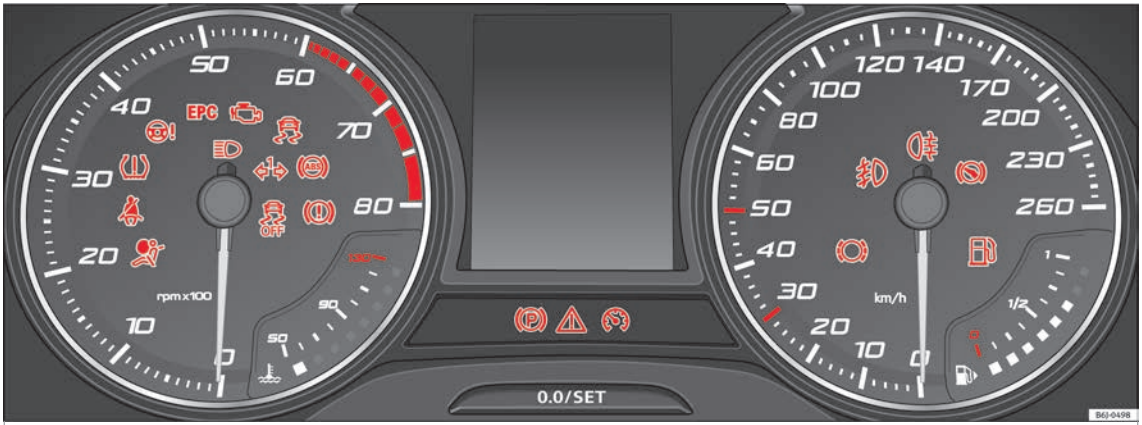


Fig. 40 Instrument panel, on dash panel

Red warning lamps

⚠	Central warning lamp: additional information on the instrument panel display	–
(P)	Parking brake on.	››› page 154 ››› page 153
(!)	**Do not continue driving!** The brake fluid level is too low or there is a fault in the brake system.	

!	*Lit up or flashing:* **Do not continue driving!** Fault in the steering.	››› page 150
	Driver or passenger has not fastened seat belt.	››› page 61
	Use the foot brake!	

Yellow warning lamps

⚠	Central warning lamp: additional information on the instrument panel display	–

	Front brake pads worn.	
	it lights up: Fault in the ESC, or disconnection caused by the system.	››› page 154
	flashes: ESC or ASR activated.	
	ASR manually deactivated.	
	ABS faulty or does not work.	
	Rear fog light switched on.	››› page 18
	lights up or flashes: fault in the emission control system.	››› page 164
	it lights up: pre-heating of diesel engine.	››› page 165
	flashes: fault in the diesel engine management.	
EPC	fault in the petrol engine management.	››› page 165
	lights up or flashes: fault in the steering system.	››› page 150
	Tyre pressure too low, or fault in the tyre pressure monitoring system.	››› page 219
	Fuel tank almost empty.	››› page 98
	Fault in airbag system and seat belt tensioners.	››› page 66

Other warning lamps

	Left or right turn signal.	››› page 19
	Hazard warning lights on.	››› page 121
	Trailer turn signals	››› page 184
	it lights up: Press the foot brake! *flashes:* the selector lever locking button has not engaged.	››› page 157
	it lights up: cruise control activated or speed limiter switched on and active.	››› page 31
	flashes: the speed set by the speed limiter has been exceeded.	
	Main beam on or flasher on.	››› page 19

On the instrument panel display

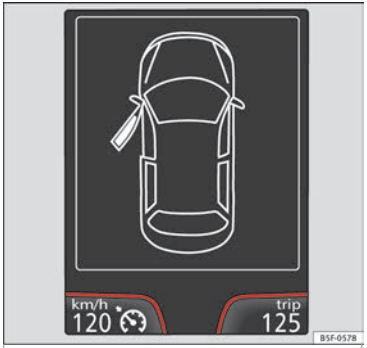


Fig. 41 On the instrument panel display: door open.

	Do not continue driving! With the corresponding indication: door(s), rear lid or bonnet open or not properly closed.	››› page 25
	Ignition: **Do not carry on driving!** Engine coolant level too low, coolant temperature too high	››› page 208
	Flashing: Fault in the engine coolant system.	
	Do not continue driving! Engine oil pressure too low.	››› page 205

»

	Fault in the battery.	››› page 212
	Driving light totally or partially faulty.	››› page 83
	Fault in the cornering light system.	››› page 116
	Diesel particulate filter blocked	››› page 164
	Level of windscreen washer fluid too low.	››› page 210
	Flashing: Fault in the oil level detection. Control manually.	››› page 205
	Ignition: Insufficient engine oil.	
	Fault in the gearbox.	››› page 160
SAFE	Immobiliser active.	››› page 150
	Service interval display	››› page 30
	Mobile telephone is connected via Bluetooth to the original telephone device.	››› Booklet Radio or ››› Booklet Navigation system
	Mobile telephone battery charge meter. Available only for devices pre-installed in factory.	
	Freezing warning. The outside temperature is lower than +4°C (+39°F).	››› page 24

	Start-Stop system activated.	››› page 181
	Start-Stop system unavailable.	
ECO	Low consumption driving status	››› page 24

On the instrument panel

OFF	Front passenger front airbag is disabled (**PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF**).	››› page 66

››› ⚠ in Warning and control lamps on page 98

››› page 98

Gearbox lever

Manual gearbox

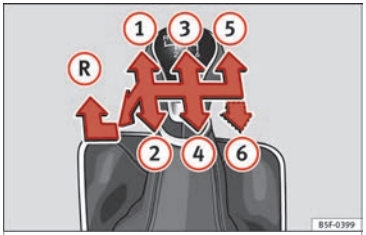


Fig. 42 Gear shift pattern of a 5 or 6-speed manual gearbox

The position of the gears is indicated on the gearbox lever ››› **Fig. 42**.

- Press the clutch pedal and keep your foot right down.
- Move the gearbox lever to the required position.
- Release the clutch.

Selecting reverse gear

- Press the clutch pedal and keep your foot right down.
- With the gearbox lever in neutral, push it upwards, move it to the left as far as it will go and then forwards to select reverse ››› **Fig. 42** (R).

- Release the clutch.

⋙ ⚠ in Changing gears on page 157

⋙ page 156

Automatic gearbox*

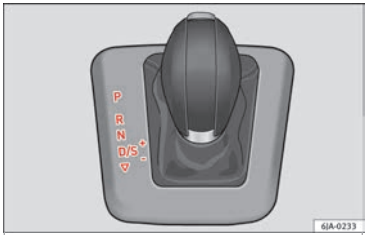


Fig. 43 Automatic gearbox: selector lever positions.

P Parking lock

R Reverse gear

N Neutral (idling)

D Drive (forward)

S Sport programme: drive (forward)

+/– Tiptronic mode: pull the lever forwards (**+**) to go up a gear or backwards (**–**) to go down a gear.

⋙ ⚠ in Basic information on page 157

⋙ page 157

SOS ⋙ page 35

Manual release of selector lever

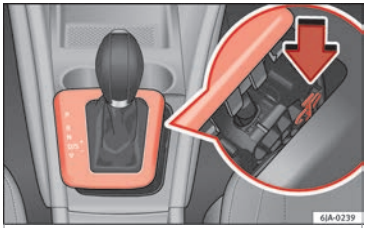


Fig. 44 Manual release of the selector lever.

If there is a fault in the power system to the electronic selector lever lock system (flat battery, blown fuse) or the system itself is faulty, the selector lever cannot be moved from position **P** in the normal manner, which prevents the vehicle from being moved. The selector lever must be unlocked using the manual release.

- Apply the handbrake.
- Pull gently on both sides at the front of the selector lever cover.
- Also loosen the cover at the rear.
- Press the yellow plastic part with your finger in the direction indicated by the arrow ⋙ **Fig. 44**.
- Press the interlock button on the selector lever knob at the same time and move the selector lever to position **N** (if the selector lever is moved back to position **P**, it will lock again).

Air conditioning

How does Climatronic* work?

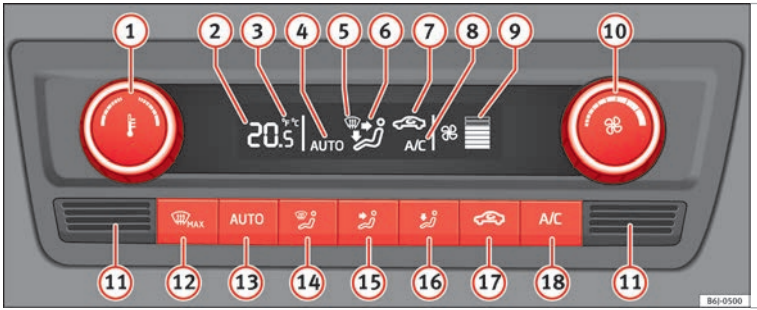


Fig. 45 In the centre console: Climatronic controls

Buttons/controls

1 Interior temperature setting

Display

2 Selected interior temperature
3 Degrees Centigrade or Fahrenheit
4 Automatic air conditioning mode
5 Defrost or demist windscreen
6 Air flow direction
7 Air recirculation
8 Cooling on/off
9 Selected blower speed

Buttons/controls

10 Set blower speed
11 Interior temperature sensor
12 Defrost or demist windscreen
13 Automatic mode
14 Air distribution to windows
15 Air distribution to upper body
16 Air distribution to footwells
17 Air recirculation
18 Cooling on/off

»» ⚠ in General notes on page 142

»» page 147

How does the manual air conditioning* work?

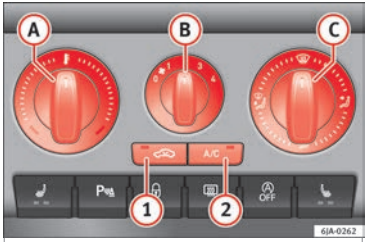


Fig. 46 In the centre console: Manual air conditioning controls

(A) Temperature

(B) Blower

(C) Air distribution

– Air distribution towards the windscreen in order to demist or defrost.

– Air distribution to upper body.

– Air distribution to footwell

– Air distribution to the windscreen and the footwell.

(1) Air recirculation

(2) **A/C**: Switching the cooling system on

Basic positions	Control position			Button		Air vents 4
	(A)	(B)	(C)	(1)	(2)	
Windscreen and side window defrost or demist	Full right	3 or 4		Switched off	Switched on automatically[a)]	Open and direct towards the side window
Mild heating	Required temperature	2 or 3	/	Do not switch on	Do not switch on	Opening
Cool as quickly as possible	Anti-clockwise as far as it will go	Briefly 4, then 2 or 3		It is switched on automatically[b)]	Switched on	Opening
Optimum cooling	Required temperature	1 or 2		Do not switch on	Switched on	Open and direct towards the roof
Fresh air mode - blower	Anti-clockwise as far as it will go	Required position		Do not switch on	Switched off	Opening

a) The lamp in button (2) lights up, even if not all of the conditions for cooling system operations are met. Cooling is indicated as available once all of the conditions are met » page 145, General notes.

b) In certain conditions, air recirculation mode can switch on automatically » page 146, a lamp illuminates in the button.

>>> ⚠ in General notes on page 142

>>> page 145

How does the heating and the fresh air system work?

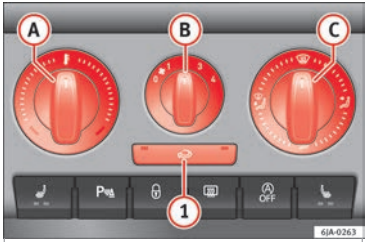


Fig. 47 In the centre console: heating system and fresh air controls.

(A) Temperature

(B) Blower

(C) Air distribution

– Air distribution towards the windscreen in order to demist or defrost.

– Air distribution to upper body.

– Air distribution to footwell

– Air distribution to the windscreen and the footwell.

(1) Air recirculation

Basic positions	Control position			Button (1)	Air vents 4
	(A)	(B)	(C)		
Windscreen and side window defrost or demist	Full right	3 or 4		Switched off	Open and direct towards the side window
Mild heating	Required temperature	2 or 3	/	Do not switch on	Opening
Fresh air mode - blower	Anti-clockwise as far as it will go	Required position		Do not switch on	Opening

››› ⚠ in General notes on page 142

››› page 144

Fluid Level control

Filling capacities

Capacities	
Fuel tank	55 litres, of which 7 litres act as reserve.
Windscreen washer fluid container in version without headlight washer	3.5 litres
Windscreen washer fluid container in versions with headlight washer	5.4 litres

Fuel

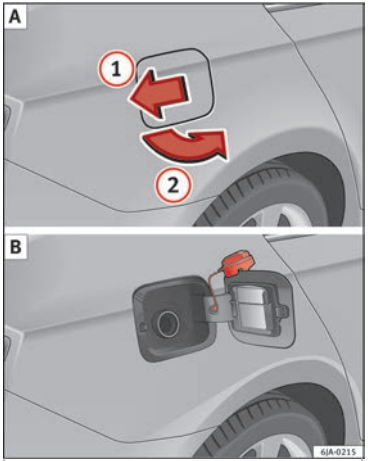


Fig. 48 Vehicle as seen from the rear right: fuel tank flap/fuel tank flap with tank unscrewed cap attached.

The flap that covers the tank cap is unlocked and locked automatically using the central locking.

Opening the fuel tank cap

- Press the fuel tank flap in the direction of the arrow (1) ››› **Fig. 48 A** and open it in the direction of the arrow (2).
- Unscrew the cap by turning it to the left.
- Rest it on the upper part of the fuel tank flap ››› **Fig. 48 B**.

Closing the fuel tank cap

- Unscrew the cap by turning it to the right as far as it will go.
- Close the lid.

››› ⚠ in Refuelling on page 200

››› page 199

Oil

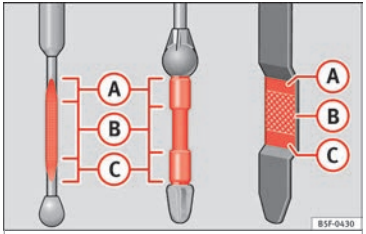


Fig. 49 Engine oil dipstick.

Fig. 50 In the engine compartment: Engine oil filler cap

The level is measured using the dipstick located in the engine compartment ››› page 205.

The oil should leave a mark between zones (A) and (C). It should never exceed zone (A).

- Zone (A): Do not add oil.
- Zone (B): You can add oil but keep the level in that zone.
- Zone (C): Add oil up to zone (B).

Topping up engine oil

- Unscrew cap from engine oil filler opening ››› Fig. 50.
- Add oil slowly.
- At the same time, check the level to ensure you do not add too much.
- When the oil level reaches at least zone (B), unscrew the engine oil filler cap carefully.

Oil properties

Engine type	Specification
Petrol without flexible service interval	VW 502 00/VW 504 00
Petrol with flexible service interval (LongLife)	VW 504 00
Diesel. Engines without Particulate filter (DPF)	VW 505 01/VW 506 01/VW 507 00
Diesel. Particulate Filter Engines (DPF). With or without flexible service interval (with and without LongLife)[a)]	VW 507 00

[a)] Only use recommended oils, otherwise you may damage the engine.

Engine oil additives

No type of additive should be mixed with the engine oil. The deterioration caused by these additives is not covered by the warranty.

››› page 205

Coolant

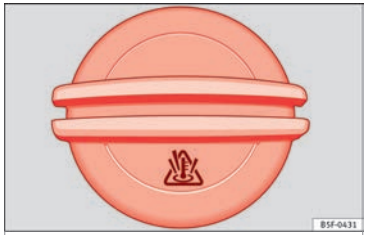


Fig. 51 Engine compartment: coolant expansion tank cap.

The coolant tank is located in the engine compartment ››› page 205.

When the engine is cold, replace the coolant when the level is below **MIN**.

Coolant specifications

The engine cooling system is supplied from the factory with a specially treated mixture of

water and at least 40 % of the additive **G13** (TL-VW 774 J), purple. This mixture gives the necessary frost protection down to -25°C (-13°F) and protects the light alloy parts of the engine cooling system against corrosion. It also prevents scaling and considerably raises the boiling point of the coolant.

To protect the cooling system, the percentage of additive must always be at least 40 %, even in warm climates where anti-freeze protection is not required.

If for weather reasons further protection is necessary, the proportion of additive may be increased, but only up to 60 %; otherwise antifreeze protection will diminish and this will worsen cooling.

When the coolant is topped up, use a mixture of **distilled water** and at least 40 % of the G13 or G12 plus-plus (TL-VW 774 G) additive (both are purple) to obtain optimal anti-corrosion protection. The mixture of G13 with G12 plus (TL-VW 774 F), G12 (red) or G11 (green-blue) engine coolants will significantly reduce anti-corrosion protection and should therefore be avoided.

»» ⚠ in Topping up the coolant level on page 209

»» page 208

Brake fluid

Fig. 52 Engine compartment: brake fluid reservoir cap

The brake fluid reservoir is located in the engine compartment »» page 205.

The level should be between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks. If it is below **MIN**, please visit a Technical Service.

»» ⚠ in Checking brake fluid level on page 210

»» page 209

Windscreen washer

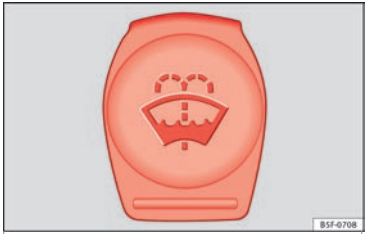


Fig. 53 In the engine compartment: windscreen washer reservoir top.

The windscreen washer reservoir is located in the engine compartment »» page 205.

To top up, mix water with a product recommended by SEAT.

In cold temperatures, add anti-freeze.

»» page 210

Battery

The battery is located in the engine compartment »» page 205. It does not require maintenance. It is checked as part of the Inspection Service. »

»» ⚠ in Introduction on page 211

»» page 211

Emergencies

Fuses

Fuse location

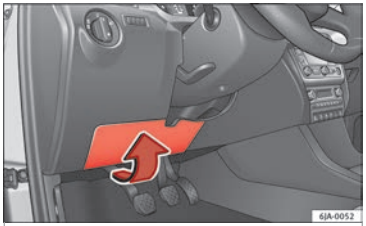


Fig. 54 On the driver-side dash panel: fuse box cover

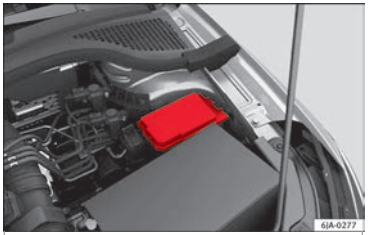


Fig. 55 In the engine compartment: fuse box cover

Underneath the instrument panel

- Carefully tilt the cover in the direction indicated by the arrow and remove it ››› **Fig. 54**.
- After changing the fuse, replace the cover on the dash panel in the direction opposite that is indicated by the arrow so that the cover tabs fit into the slots on the dash panel. Subsequently, press down on the cover to close.

In the engine compartment

Press the locking tabs to release the fuse box cover ››› **Fig. 55**.

Identifying fuses situated below the dash panel by colours

Colour	Amp rating
Black	1
Purple	3
Light brown	5
Brown	7.5
Red	10
Blue	15
Yellow	20
White or transparent	25
Green	30
Orange	40

››› ⚠ in Introduction on page 80

››› page 80

Replacing a blown fuse

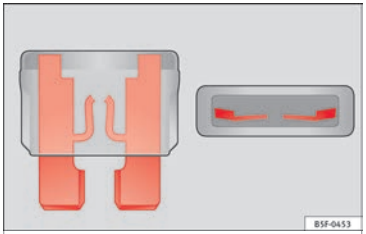


Fig. 56 Image of a blown fuse

Preparation

- Switch off the ignition, lights and all electrical equipment.
- Open the corresponding fuse box ››› **page 81**.

Identifying a blown fuse

A fuse is blown if its metal strip is ruptured ››› **Fig. 56**.

Point a lamp at the fuse to see if it has blown. »

To replace a fuse

- Remove the fuse.
- Replace the blown fuse by one with an *identical* amperage rating (same colour and markings) and *identical* size.
- Replace the cover again or close the fuse box lid.

Bulbs

Bulbs (12 V)

Full-LED headlights are designed to last the lifetime of the car and cannot be replaced. If the headlight becomes damaged, go to a specialised workshop.

Below, the light source used for all functions is broken down.

Halogen headlights	Type
Daytime running light/side light	P21W SLL
Dipped beam headlights	H7 LL
Main beam headlights	H7 LL
Turn signal	PY21W

Full-LED main headlights	Type
No bulbs may be replaced. All functions are with LEDs	

Front fog light	Type
Fog/cornering lights*	H8

Rear bulb light	Type
Brake light/tail light	P21/5W
Side lights	P21/5W (side panel) R5W (rear lid)
Turn signal	PY21W
Retro fog light	P21W
Reverse lights	P21W

LED rear lights	Type
Turn signal	PY21W
Retro fog light	P21W
Reverse lights	P21W
The remaining functions work with LEDs	

Action in the event of a puncture

What to do first

- Park the vehicle on a horizontal surface and in a safe place as far away from traffic as possible.
- Apply the handbrake.
- Switch on the hazard warning lights.
- *Manual gearbox:* select the 1st gear.
- *Automatic gearbox:* Move the selector lever to position **P**.
- If you are towing a trailer, unhitch it from your vehicle.
- Have the vehicle tool kit* ››› page 75 and the spare wheel ››› page 218 ready.
- Observe the applicable legislation for each country (reflective vest, warning triangles, etc.).
- All occupants should leave the vehicle and wait in a safe place (for instance behind the roadside crash barrier).

⚠ WARNING

- **Always observe the above steps and protect yourself and other road users.**
- **If you change the wheel on a slope, block the wheel on the opposite side of the car with a stone or similar to prevent the vehicle from moving.**

Repairing a tyre with the anti-puncture kit

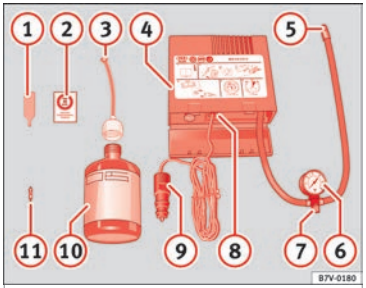


Fig. 57 Standard representation: contents of the anti-puncture kit.

The anti-puncture kit is located under the floor panel in the luggage compartment.

Sealing the tyre

- Unscrew the tyre valve cap and insert. Use the ››› Fig. 57 ① tool to remove the insert. Place it on a clean surface.
- Shake the tyre sealant bottle vigorously ››› Fig. 57 ⑩.
- Screw the inflator tube ››› Fig. 57 ③ into the sealant bottle. The bottle's seal will break automatically.
- Remove the lid from the filling tube ››› Fig. 57 ③ and screw the open end of the tube into the tyre valve.
- With the tyre sealant bottle upside down, fill the tyre with the contents of the sealant bottle.
- Remove the bottle from the valve.
- Place the insert back into the tyre valve using the tool ››› Fig. 57 ①.

Inflating the tyre

- Screw the compressor tyre inflator tube ››› Fig. 57 ⑤ into the tyre valve.
- Check that the air bleed screw is closed ››› Fig. 57 ⑦.
- Start the engine and leave it running.
- Insert the connector ››› Fig. 57 ⑨ into the vehicle's 12-volt socket ››› page 134.
- Turn the air compressor on with the ON/OFF switch ››› Fig. 57 ⑧.
- Keep the air compressor running until it reaches 2.0 to 2.5 bar (29-36 psi/200-250 kPa). **A maximum of 8 minutes**.
- Disconnect the air compressor.
- If it does not reach the pressure indicated, unscrew the tyre inflator tube from the valve.
- Move the vehicle 10m so that the sealant is distributed throughout the tyre.
- Screw the compressor tyre inflator into the valve.
- Repeat the inflation process.
- If the indicated pressure still cannot be reached, the tyre is too badly damaged. Stop and request assistance from an authorised technician.
- Disconnect the air compressor. Unscrew the tyre inflator tube from the tyre valve.
- When the tyre pressure is between 2.5 and 2.0 bars, continue driving without exceeding 80 km/h (50 mph).
- Check the pressure again after 10 minutes ››› page 78.

››› ⚠ in TMS Anti-puncture kit (Tyre Mobility System)* on page 77

››› page 76

Changing a wheel

Vehicle tool kit*

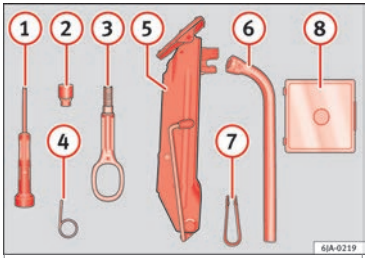


Fig. 58 Vehicle tool kit.

The vehicle tool kit and the jack are stored in a box on the spare wheel or in the spare wheel well. There is also enough space for the towing bracket ball coupling. The box is strapped to the spare wheel with tape.

The vehicle tool kit includes the following parts (depending on equipment):

1. Screwdriver
2. Adapter for anti-theft wheel bolts
3. Towline anchorage
4. Wire hook for removing hub caps
5. Jack
6. Box spanner for wheel bolts
7. Clip for wheel bolt cover
8. Spare set of bulbs

Before stowing the jack again, screw down the arm as far as it will go.

›› ⚠ in What to do first on page 44

›› page 75

Wheel cover

Fig. 59 Remove the wheel cover.

Removing

- Place the hook from the vehicle tool kit* on the reinforced edge of the wheel trim.
- Insert the box spanner through the hook, supporting it on the tyre and remove the wheel trim.

Fitting

- Press the wheel trim onto the wheel at the cut out designed for the valve.
- Press the wheel trim on both sides in the direction of the valve so that it fits correctly in place around all the perimeter.

CAUTION

- **Press down by hand, do not hit the wheel trim! Knocking it sharply, particularly at points where the wheel trim has not yet been inserted, could result in damage to the wheel trim guiding and centring elements.**
- **Before fitting the trim on a steel wheel attached with an anti-theft wheel bolt, make sure the bolt is in the hole in the valve area** **›› page 47, Anti-theft wheel bolts*.**
- **Where trim is fitted at a later date, ensure enough air inflow is guaranteed in order to cool the brake system.**

Wheel bolt caps

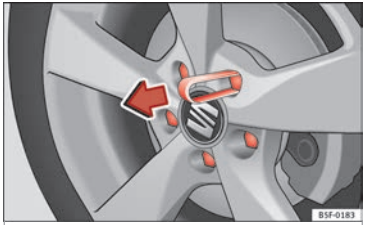


Fig. 60 Pull off the wheel bolt cap.

Removing

- Fit the plastic clip (vehicle tools) over the cap until it clicks into place ››› **Fig. 60**.
- Remove the cap with the plastic clip.

Fitting

- Insert the caps as far as they will go over the wheel bolts.

The wheel bolt caps are stored in a box on the spare wheel or in the spare wheel well.

Anti-theft wheel bolts*

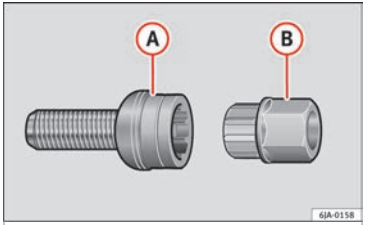


Fig. 61 Anti-theft wheel bolt with adapter.

Anti-theft wheel bolts (one bolt per wheel) can only be loosened or tightened using a factory-supplied adapter.

- Pull off the hub cap or bolt cover.
- Insert the adapter (B) ››› **Fig. 61** with its toothed side as far as it will go on the interior toothing of the anti-theft wheel bolt (A) so that only the outer hexagonal is protruding.
- Fit the box spanner as far as it will go over adapter (B).
- Loosen or firmly tighten the wheel bolt ››› **page 47**.
- After removing the adapter, replace the hub cap or the anti-theft wheel bolt cover.
- **Check** the **tightening torque** as soon as possible with a torque wrench.

Note down the code number stamped on the front of the adapter or of the anti-theft wheel bolt. You will need this number to obtain a spare adapter from the SEAT original accessories programme.

You should always have a wheel bolt adapter as part of your vehicle tools.

Loosening and tightening wheel bolts

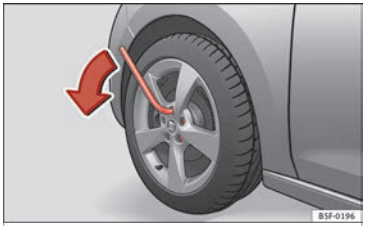


Fig. 62 Changing a wheel: loosen the wheel bolts.

Loosening wheel bolts

- Insert the box spanner onto the wheel bolt as far as it will go[1]. »

[1] The corresponding adapter is required to unscrew or tighten the anti-theft wheel bolts ››› **page 47**.

• Grip the end of the box spanner and turn the wheel bolt about **one** turn anti-clockwise ››› Fig. 62.

Tightening wheel bolts

• Insert the box spanner onto the wheel bolt as far as it will go[1].

• Grip the box spanner as close to the end as possible and tighten the bolt firmly by turning clockwise.

⚠ WARNING

The wheel bolts should only be loosened slightly (about one turn) before raising the vehicle with the jack. Risk of accident!

Lifting the vehicle

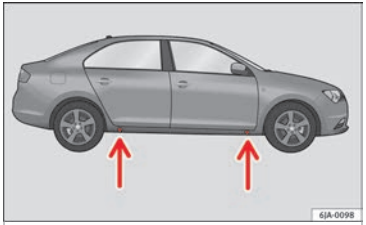


Fig. 63 Changing a wheel: jack position points.

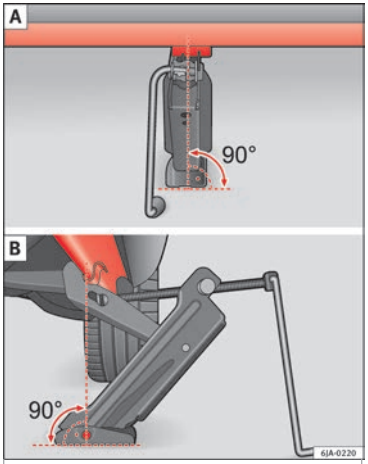


Fig. 64 Fitting the jack.

To place the jack, locate the jacking point under the door sill closest to the wheel to be changed ››› Fig. 63. The jacking point is underneath the stamp on the door sill.

• Raise the jack, turning the crank handle to wind it up under the jacking point until its claw is directly below the jacking point of the door sill.

[1] The corresponding adapter is required to unscrew or tighten the anti-theft wheel bolts ››› page 47.

- Adjust the jack so that its claw surrounds the jacking point on the door sill ››› Fig. 64 - B underneath the stamp.
- Make sure that the base of the jack is entirely supported on a flat surface and that it is vertical ››› Fig. 64 to the point where the claw surrounds the jacking point on the door sill.
- Continue to wind up the jack using the crank handle until the defective wheel is clear off the ground.

Removing and fitting a wheel

Change the wheel after loosening the wheel bolts and raising the vehicle with the jack.

Taking off the wheel

- Unscrew the wheel bolts using the box spanner and place them on a clean surface.
- Take off the wheel.

Putting on the spare wheel

When fitting tyres with a compulsory rotation direction, observe the instructions in ››› page 49.

- Mount the wheel.
- Screw on the wheel bolts in position and tighten them loosely with a box spanner.
- Carefully lower the vehicle using the jack*.
- Tighten the wheel bolts in diagonal pairs using the wheel brace.

The wheel bolts should be clean and turn easily. Before fitting the spare wheel, inspect the wheel condition and hub mounting surfaces. These surfaces must be clean before fitting the wheel.

Tyres with compulsory direction of rotation

A directional tread pattern can be identified by the arrows on the sidewall that point in the direction of rotation. Always observe the direction of rotation indicated when fitting the wheel to guarantee optimum properties of this type of tyres with regard to grip, noises, wear and aquaplaning.

If it is absolutely necessary to fit the spare tyre* against the direction of rotation, drive with care as this means the tyre does not offer optimum driving properties. This is of particular importance when the road surface is wet.

Replace the punctured tyre as soon as possible and restore the obligatory and correct direction of rotation of all tyres.

Subsequent work

- *Alloy wheels:* replace the wheel bolt caps.
- *Plate wheels:* replace the wheel hubcap ››› page 46.
- Return all tools to their proper storing location.
- If the replaced wheel does not fit in the spare wheel housing, store it safely in the luggage compartment ››› page 137.
- Check the tyre pressure of the newly mounted tyre as soon as possible.
- In vehicles fitted with a tyre pressure indicator, adjust the pressure and store it in memory ››› page 219.
- Have the tightening torque of the wheel bolts checked as soon as possible with a torque wrench (it should be 120 Nm). Meanwhile, drive carefully.
- Have the flat tyre replaced as quickly as possible.

Snow chains

Use

Snow chains should only be used on the *front* wheels. »

In winter road conditions, snow chains not only help to improve grip but also improve the braking capacity.

For technical reasons snow chains may only be used on tyres with the following wheel rim/tyre combinations.

Rim size	Rim offset	Tyre size
5J x 14[a)]	35 mm	175/70
6J x 15[b)]	38 mm	185/60
6J x 15[b)]	38 mm	195/55

[a)] Only use snow chains with fine-pitch links and lock no greater than **9 mm**.

[b)] Only use snow chains with fine-pitch links and lock no greater than **13 mm**.

Remove the wheel trims before fitting snow chains.

CAUTION

Chains must be removed when roads are free of snow. Otherwise they will impair handling, damage the tyres and wear out very quickly.

Emergency towing of the vehicle

Towing

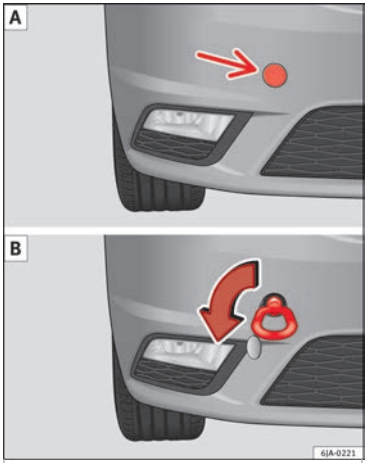


Fig. 65 Right side of the front bumper: towline anchorage screwed in.

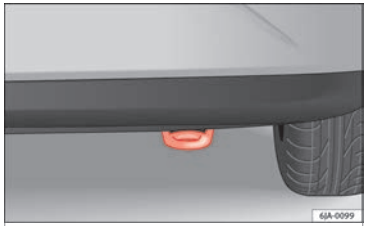


Fig. 66 Right side of the rear bumper: Towing ring.

Towline anchorages

- Attach the bar or rope to the towline anchorages.

It is located with the vehicle's tools ››› page 75.

- Screw the front towline anchorage into the screw connection ››› Fig. 65 and tighten it with the wheel brace.

The rear towline anchorage is under the rear bumper, on the right ››› Fig. 66.

Tow rope or tow bar

The tow bar offers increased safety and a lower risk of damage.

The tow rope is recommended when there is no tow bar. It must be elastic so that it does not damage the vehicle.

Notes for the driver of the towing vehicle

- The tow rope must be taut before you drive off.
- Release the clutch very carefully when starting the vehicle (manual gearbox), or accelerate gently (automatic gearbox).

Driving style

Towing requires some experience, especially when using a tow *rope*. Both drivers should realise how difficult it is to tow a vehicle. Inexperienced drivers should not attempt to tow.

Do not pull too hard with the towing vehicle and take care to avoid jerking the tow rope. When towing on an unpaved road, there is always a risk of overloading and damaging the anchorage points.

The towline anchorages are located under the floor panel in the luggage compartment.

Switch on the ignition so that the turn signals, windscreen wipers and windscreen washer can work. Ensure that the steering wheel is unlocked and moves freely.

Place the gear lever in neutral on vehicles with a manual gearbox. With an automatic gearbox, place the lever in **N**.

To brake, press the brake pedal firmly. The brake servo does not work when the engine is switched off.

The power steering only works when the ignition is switched on and the vehicle is moving, provided that the battery is sufficiently charged. Otherwise, it will need more force.

Ensure that the tow rope remains taut at all times.

›› page 78

Tow-starting

If the engine will not start, first try starting it using the battery of another vehicle ›› page 51. You should only attempt to tow-start a vehicle if charging the battery does not work. This is done by leveraging wheel movement.

When tow-starting a vehicle with a **petrol engine**, do not tow it more than a *short* distance, otherwise unburned fuel can enter the catalytic converter.

- Engage 2nd or 3rd gear before moving off.
- Press the clutch and hold the pedal down.
- Switch the ignition on.
- Once both vehicles are moving, release the clutch.
- As soon as the engine has started, press the clutch and move the gear lever to neutral.

How to jump start

Jump leads

The jump lead must have a sufficient wire cross section.

If the engine fails to start because of a discharged battery, the battery can be connected to the battery of another vehicle to start the engine.

Both batteries need to have nominal voltage of 12 V. The **capacity** (Ah) of the back-up battery should not be notably less than the drained battery.

Jump leads must comply with standard **DIN 72553** (see cable manufacturer's instructions). The wire cross section must be at least 25 mm^2 for petrol engines and at least 35 mm^2 for diesel engines.

Jump leads

Positive cable – usually red

Negative cable – usually black

⚠ WARNING

- **A flat battery can also freeze at temperatures slightly below to 0°C (32°F). Do not attempt to start the vehicle with a frozen battery. Risk of explosion!**

»

- **Please note the safety warnings referring to working in the engine compartment** **»» page 202.**
- **The non-insulated parts of the battery clamps must not be allowed to touch. Additionally, the jump lead attached to the positive battery terminal must not touch metal parts of the vehicle. Risk of short circuit!**
- **Do not connect the negative lead to the negative terminal of the discharged battery. In the event of sparks when starting the engine, the explosive gas given off by the battery could catch fire.**
- **Position the jump leads in such a way that they cannot come into contact with any moving parts in the engine compartment.**
- **Do not bend over the battery. Risk of acid burns!**
- **The screw plugs on the battery cells must be screwed in firmly.**
- **Keep sources of fire (flames, lit cigarettes, etc.) away from the battery. - Risk of explosion!**
- **Never use the jump leads on batteries in which the electrolyte level is too low. Risk of explosion and acid burns.**

Note

- **The vehicles must not touch each other, as electricity could flow as soon as the positive terminals are connected.**

- **The discharged battery must be properly connected to the vehicle electrical system.**
- **The jump leads should be checked in a specialist vehicle battery shop.**

How to jump start: description

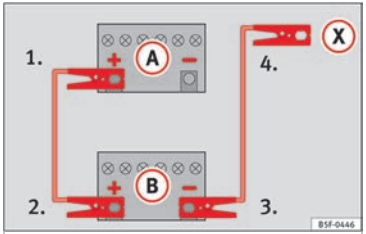


Fig. 67 Diagram of connections for vehicles without Start Stop system

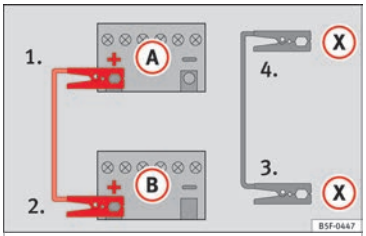


Fig. 68 Diagram of connections for vehicles with Start Stop system

Jump lead terminal connections

1. Switch off the ignition of both vehicles »» ⚠.
2. Connect one end of the *red* jump lead to the positive (+) terminal of the vehicle with the flat battery (A) »» **Fig. 67**.
3. Connect the other end of the *red* jump lead to the positive terminal (+) in the vehicle providing assistance (B).
4. *For vehicles without Start-Stop system:* connect one end of the *black* jump lead to the negative terminal (–) of the vehicle providing the current (B) »» **Fig. 67**.

– *For vehicles with Start-Stop system:* connect one end of the *black* jump lead (X) to a suitable ground terminal, to a solid piece of metal in the engine block, or to the engine block itself »» **Fig. 68**.

5. Connect the other end of the *black* jump lead (X) to a solid metal component bolted to the engine block or to the engine block itself of the vehicle with the flat battery. Do not connect it to a point near the battery (A).
6. Position the leads in such a way that they cannot come into contact with any moving parts in the engine compartment.

Starting

7. Start the engine of the vehicle with the boosting battery and let it run at idling speed.
8. Start the engine of the vehicle with the flat battery and wait for 2 or 3 minutes until the engine is running.

Removing the jump leads

9. Before you remove the jump leads, switch off the dipped beam headlights if they are switched on.
10. Turn on the heater blower and heated rear window in the vehicle with the flat battery. This helps minimise voltage peaks which are generated when the leads are disconnected.
11. When the engine is running, disconnect the leads in reverse order to the details given above.

Make sure the battery clamps have sufficient metal-to-metal contact with the battery terminals.

If the engine fails to start, switch off the starter after about 10 seconds and try again after about 1 minute.

⚠ WARNING

- **Please note the safety warnings referring to working in the engine compartment** **››› page 202.**
- **The battery providing assistance must have the same voltage as the flat battery (12V) and approximately the same capacity (see imprint on battery). Failure to comply could result in an explosion.**
- **Never use jump leads when one of the batteries is frozen. Danger of explosion! Even after the battery has thawed, battery acid could leak and cause chemical burns. If a battery freezes, it should be replaced.**
- **Keep sparks, flames and lighted cigarettes away from batteries, danger of explosion. Failure to comply could result in an explosion.**
- **Observe the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the jump leads.**
- **Do not connect the negative cable from the other vehicle directly to the negative terminal of the flat battery. The gas emitted from the battery could be ignited by sparks. Danger of explosion.**
- **Do not attach the negative cable from the other vehicle to parts of the fuel system or to the brake line.**
- **The non-insulated parts of the battery clamps must not be allowed to touch. The jump lead attached to the positive battery terminal must not touch metal parts of the vehicle, this can cause a short circuit.**
- **Position the leads in such a way that they cannot come into contact with any moving parts in the engine compartment.**
- **Do not lean on the batteries. This could result in chemical burns.**

Note

The vehicles must not touch each other, otherwise electricity could flow as soon as the positive terminals are connected.

Changing the windscreen wiper blades

Changing the wiper blades

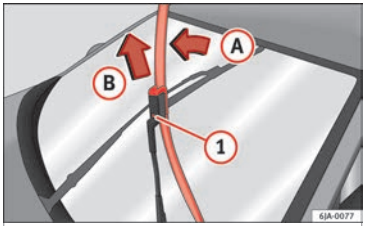


Fig. 69 Windscreen wiper blades.

Set the windscreen wiper arms to the service position before changing the blades. »

Service position

- Close the bonnet.
- Switch the ignition on and off.
- Press the lever to position (4) ››› Fig. 140 ››› page 125, the windscreen wiper arms are set to the service position.

Taking off the wiper blade

- Lift the windscreen wiper arm away from the glass moving the blade slightly in the direction of the arm – arrow (A) ››› Fig. 69.
- Hold the top of the windscreen wiper arm with one hand.
- Unlock the catch (1) with the other hand and remove the blade in the direction of arrow (B).

Fitting the wiper blade

- Slide the blade fully until it clicks into position.
- Check that the wiper is correctly secured.
- Fold the windscreen wiper arm back down onto the glass.
- Switch the ignition on and press the lever to position (4) ››› Fig. 140 ››› page 125, the windscreen wiper arms are set to the basic position.

Changing the rear window wiper blade*

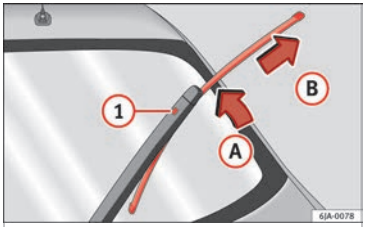


Fig. 70 Rear window wiper blade.

Taking off the wiper blade

- Lift the rear window wiper arm away from the glass moving the blade slightly in the direction of the arm – arrow (A) ››› Fig. 70.
- Hold the top of the rear window wiper arm with one hand.
- Unlock the catch (1) with the other hand and remove the blade in the direction of arrow (B).

Fitting the wiper blade

- Slide the blade fully until it clicks into position.
- Check that the wiper is correctly secured.
- Fold the rear window wiper arm back down onto the glass.

Safety

Safe driving

Safety first!

This chapter contains important information, tips, suggestions and warnings that you should read and consider for both your own safety and for your passengers' safety.

⚠ WARNING

- **This manual contains important information about the operation of the vehicle, both for the driver and the passengers. The other sections of the on-board documentation also contain further information that you should be aware of for your own safety and for the safety of your passengers.**
- **Ensure that the on-board documentation is kept in the vehicle at all times. This is especially important when lending or selling the vehicle to another person.**

Advice about driving

Before starting every trip

For your own safety and the safety of your passengers, always note the following points before every trip:

– Make sure that the vehicle's lights and turn signals are working properly.

– Check tyre pressure.

– Ensure that all windows provide a clear and good view of the surroundings.

– Make sure all luggage is secured ››› page 137.

– Make sure that no objects can interfere with the pedals.

– Adjust front seat, head restraint and mirrors properly according to your size.

– Ensure that the passengers in the rear seats always have the head restraints in the in-use position ››› page 59.

– Instruct passengers to adjust the head restraints according to their height.

– Protect children with appropriate child seats and properly applied seat belts ››› page 72.

– Assume the correct sitting position. Instruct your passengers also to assume a proper sitting position. ››› page 56.

– Fasten your seat belt securely. Instruct your passengers also to fasten their seat belts properly. ››› page 61.

Factors influencing safety

As a driver, you are responsible for yourself and your passengers. When your concentration or driving safety is affected by any circumstance, you endanger yourself as well as others on the road ››› ⚠, for this reason:

– Always pay attention to traffic and do not get distracted by passengers or telephone calls.

– Never drive when your driving ability is impaired (e.g. by medication, alcohol, drugs).

– Observe traffic laws and speed limits.

– Always reduce your speed as appropriate for road, traffic and weather conditions.

– When travelling long distances, take breaks regularly - at least every two hours.

– If possible, avoid driving when you are tired or stressed.

⚠ WARNING

When driving safety is impaired during a trip, the risk of injury and accidents increases.

Safety equipment

Never put your safety or the safety of your passengers in danger. In the event of an accident, the safety equipment may reduce the »

risk of injury. The following list includes most of the safety equipment in your SEAT:

- three-point seat belts,
- belt tension limiters for the front and rear side seats,
- belt tensioners for the front seats,
- belt height adjustment for the front seats,
- front airbags,
- side airbags in the front seat backrests,
- side airbags in the rear seat backrests*,
- head-protection airbags,
- active front head restraints*,
- “ISOFIX” anchor points for child seats in the rear side seats with the “ISOFIX” system,
- height-adjustable front head restraints,
- rear head restraints with in-use position and non-use position,
- adjustable steering column.

The safety equipment mentioned above works together to provide you and your passengers with the best possible protection in the event of an accident. However, these safety systems can only be effective if you and your passengers are sitting in a correct position and use this equipment properly.

Safety is everyone's business!

Correct position for passengers

Correct sitting position for driver

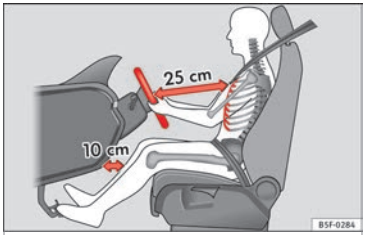


Fig. 71 The proper distance between driver and steering wheel

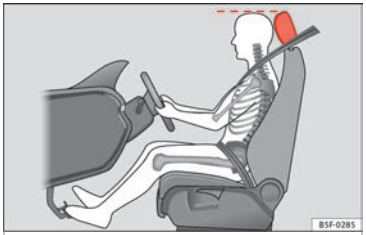


Fig. 72 Correct head restraint position for the driver.

For your own safety and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, we recommend the following adjustments for the driver:

– Adjust the steering wheel so that there is a distance of at least 25 cm between the steering wheel and the centre of your chest ››› **Fig. 71**.

– Move the driver's seat forwards or backwards so that you are able to press the accelerator, brake and clutch pedals to the floor with your knees still slightly angled ››› ⚠.

– Ensure that you can reach the highest point of the steering wheel.

– Adjust the head restraint so that its upper edge is at the same level as the top of your head, or as close as possible to the same level as the top of your head ››› **Fig. 72**.

– Move the seat backrest to an upright position so that your back rests completely against it.

– Fasten your seat belt securely ››› **page 61**.

– Keep both feet in the footwell so that you have the vehicle under control at all times.

Adjustment of the driver's seat ››› 📖 **page 11**.

⚠ WARNING

- **An incorrect sitting position of the driver can lead to severe injuries.**

- **Adjust the driver's seat so that there is at least 25 cm distance between the centre of the chest and the centre of the steering wheel ››› Fig. 71. If you are sitting closer than 25 cm, the airbag system cannot protect you properly.**
- **If your physical constitution prevents you from maintaining the minimum distance of 25 cm, contact a specialised workshop. The workshop will help you decide if special specific modifications are necessary.**
- **When driving, always hold the steering wheel with both hands on the outside of the ring at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions. This reduces the risk of injury when the driver airbag is triggered.**
- **Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position, or in any other manner (e.g. in the centre of the steering wheel). In such cases, if the airbag is triggered, you may sustain injuries to the arms, hands and head.**
- **To reduce the risk of injury to the driver during sudden braking manoeuvres or an accident, never drive with the backrest tilted far back! The airbag system and seat belts can only provide optimal protection when the backrest is in an upright position and the driver is wearing his or her seat belt correctly.**
- **Adjust the head restraint properly to achieve optimal protection.**

Adjusting the steering wheel position

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 13.

⚠ WARNING

- **Never adjust the position of the steering wheel when the vehicle is moving, as this could cause an accident.**
- **Move the lever up firmly so the steering wheel position does not accidentally change during driving. risk of accident!**
- **Make sure you are capable of reaching and firmly holding the upper part of the steering wheel: risk of accident!**
- **If you adjust the steering wheel so that it points towards your face, the driver airbag will not protect you properly in the event of an accident. Make sure that the steering wheel points towards your chest.**

Correct sitting position for front passenger

For your own safety and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, we recommend the following adjustments for the front passenger:

– Move the front passenger seat back as far as possible ››› ⚠.

– Move the seat backrest to an upright position so that your back rests completely against it.

– Adjust the head restraint so that its upper edge is at the same level as the top of your head, or as close as possible to the same level as the top of your head ››› page 59.

– Always keep both feet in the footwell in front of the front passenger seat.

– Fasten your seat belt securely ››› page 61.

It is possible to deactivate the front passenger airbag in **exceptional circumstances** ››› page 71.

Adjusting the front passenger seat ››› page 11.

⚠ WARNING

- **An incorrect sitting position of the front passenger can lead to severe injuries.**
- **Adjust the front passenger seat so that there is at least 25 cm between your chest and the dash panel. If you are sitting closer than 25 cm, the airbag system cannot protect you properly.**
- **If your physical constitution prevents you from maintaining the minimum distance of 25 cm, contact a specialised workshop. The workshop will help you decide if special specific modifications are necessary.**

»

- **Always keep your feet in the footwell when the vehicle is moving; never rest them on the dash panel, out the window or on the seat. An incorrect sitting position exposes you to an increased risk of injury in case of a sudden braking or an accident. If the airbag is triggered, you could sustain severe injuries due to an incorrect sitting position.**
- **To reduce the risk of injury to the front passenger in events such as sudden braking manoeuvres or an accident, never travel with the backrest tilted far back! The airbag system and seat belts can only provide optimal protection when the backrest is in an upright position and the front passenger is wearing his or her seat belt properly. The further the seat backrests are tilted to the rear, the greater the risk of injury due to incorrect positioning of the belt web or to the incorrect sitting position!**
- **Adjust the head restraint correctly in order to achieve maximum protection.**

Correct sitting position for rear seat passengers

To reduce the risk of injury in the event of a sudden braking manoeuvre or an accident, passengers on the rear seat bench must consider the following:

– Sit up straight.

– Adjust the head restraint to the correct position ››› page 59.

– Always keep both feet in the footwell in front of the rear seat.

– Fasten your seat belt securely ››› page 61.

– Use an appropriate child restraint system when you take children in the vehicle ››› page 72.

⚠ WARNING

- **If the passengers in the rear seats are not sitting properly, they could sustain severe injuries.**
- **Adjust the head restraint correctly in order to achieve maximum protection.**
- **Seat belts can only provide optimal protection when seat backrests are in an upright position and the vehicle occupants are wearing their seat belts correctly. If passengers In the rear seats are not sitting in an upright position, the risk of injury due to incorrect positioning of the seat belt increases.**

Examples of incorrect sitting positions

Seat belts can provide optimal protection only when the belt webs are properly positioned. Incorrect sitting positions substantially reduce the protective function of seat belts and increase the risk of injury due to incorrect seat belt position. As the driver, you are responsible for all passengers, especially children.

– Never allow anyone to assume an incorrect sitting position in the vehicle while travelling ››› ⚠.

The following list contains examples of sitting positions that could be dangerous for all vehicle occupants. The list is not complete, but we would like to make you aware of this issue.

Therefore, whenever the vehicle is in motion:

- Never stand in the vehicle.
- Never stand on the seats.
- Never kneel on the seats.
- Never tilt your seat backrest far to the rear.
- Never lean against the dash panel.
- Never lie on the rear bench.
- Never sit on the front edge of a seat.
- Never sit sideways.
- Never lean out of a window.
- Never put your feet out of a window.
- Never put your feet on the dash panel.
- Never put your feet on the surface of a seat.
- Do not allow anyone to travel in the footwell.
- Never travel without wearing the seat belt.
- Do not allow anyone to travel in the luggage compartment.

⚠ WARNING

- **Any incorrect sitting position increases the risk of severe injuries.**
- **Sitting in an incorrect position exposes the vehicle occupants to severe injuries if airbags are triggered, by striking a vehicle occupant who has assumed an incorrect sitting position.**
- **Before the vehicle moves, assume the proper sitting position and maintain it throughout the trip. Before every trip, instruct your passengers to sit properly and to stay in this position during the trip** **»» page 56, Correct position for passengers.**

Correct adjustment of front head restraints

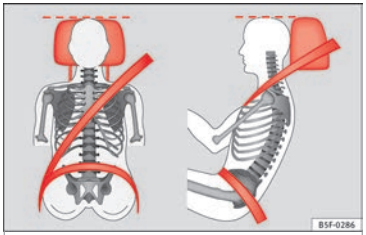


Fig. 73 Correctly adjusted head restraint as viewed from the front and the side.

Properly adjusted head restraints are an important part of passenger protection and can reduce the risk of injuries in most accident situations.

– Adjust the head restraint so that its upper edge is, as far as possible, at the same level as the top of your head, or at the very least, at eye level **»» Fig. 73**.

Adjusting the head restraints **»» page 128**

Active head restraints*

Vehicle occupants are pressed into their seats during a rear end collision. The resulting body pressure on the seat backrest activates the active head restraint* on the front seat, which moves rapidly forwards and upwards at the same time. This movement reduces the distance between the occupant's head and the head restraint, thus reducing the risk of injuries such as whiplash.

⚠ WARNING

- **Travelling with the head restraints removed or improperly adjusted increases the risk of severe injuries. An improper adjustment of the head restraints may cause death in an accident and increase the risk of suffering injuries during abrupt braking actions or unexpected manoeuvres.**
- **The head restraints must always be adjusted according to the height of the passenger.**

Note

The active head restraints* could also be triggered if a vehicle occupant applies a high level of pressure to the seat backrest (e.g. by "falling" back into the seat when entering the vehicle) or if pressure is applied to a front seat head restraint from the rear. This accidental activation is, however, not dangerous, as the active head restraints will return to the original position immediately and are thus once again ready.

Correct adjustment of rear head restraints

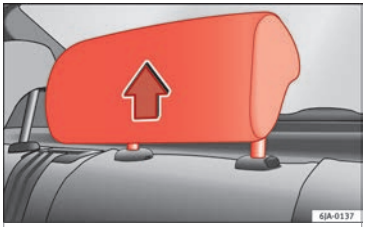


Fig. 74 Head restraints in the correct position.

Properly adjusted head restraints are an important part of passenger protection and can reduce the risk of injuries in most accident situations. »

Rear outer seat head restraints

– The rear outer seat head restraints have 4 positions.

– Three positions for **use** ››› Fig. 74. In these positions, the head restraints are used normally, and along with the rear seat belts, protect passengers in the rear seats.

– And one position for **non-use**.

– To fit the head restraints in position for use, pull on the edges with both hands in the direction of the arrow.

Centre rear head restraint*

– The centre head restraint only has two positions, **in-use** (head restraint up) and **non-use** (head restraint down).

⚠ WARNING

- **Under no circumstances should the rear passengers travel while the head restraints are in the non-use position.**
- **Do not swap the centre rear head restraint with either of the outer seat rear head restraints. Risk of injury in case of an accident!**

ⓘ CAUTION

Note the instructions on the adjustment of the head restraints ››› page 128.

Pedal area

Pedals

– Ensure that you can always press the accelerator, brake and clutch pedals unimpaired to the floor.

– Ensure that the pedals can return unimpaired to their initial positions.

– Ensure that the floor mats are securely fastened during the trip and do not obstruct the pedals ››› ⚠.

Only use floor mats which leave the pedals clear and which are secured to prevent them from slipping. You can obtain suitable floor mats from a specialised dealership. Fasteners* for floor mats are fitted in the footwells.

If a brake circuit fails, the brake pedal must be pressed down thoroughly in order to stop the vehicle.

Wear suitable footwear

Always wear shoes which support your feet properly and give you a good feeling for the pedals.

⚠ WARNING

- **If the pedals are obstructed, an accident may occur. Risk of serious injuries.**
- **Never lay or fit floor mats or other floor coverings over the original floor mats. This would reduce the pedal area and could obstruct the pedals. Risk of accident.**
- **Never place objects in the driver footwell. An object could move into the pedal area and impair pedal operation. In the event of a sudden driving or braking manoeuvre, you will not be able to operate the brake, clutch or accelerator pedal. Risk of accident!**

Seat belts

The whys and wherefores of seat belts

Number of seats

Your vehicle has **five** seats, two in the front and three in the rear. Each seat is equipped with a three-point seat belt.

In some versions, your vehicle is approved **only** for four seats. Two front seats and two rear seats.

⚠ WARNING

- **Never transport more than the permitted amount of people in your vehicle.**
- **Every vehicle occupant must properly fasten and wear the seat belt belonging to his or her seat. Children must be protected with an appropriate child restraint system.**

Seat belt lamp*

The control lamp illuminates to remind the driver to fasten his seat belt.

Before starting the vehicle:

– Fasten your seat belt securely.

– Instruct your passengers to fasten their seat belts properly before driving off.

– Protect children by using a child seat according to the child's height and weight.

The control lamp on the instrument panel lights up [1] if the driver or passenger[1] has not fastened their belt when the ignition is switched on.

If, when starting to drive, speed surpasses 25 km/h (15 mph) approx. and no seat belts are worn or they are unfastened during the drive, a warning sound will be heard for a few seconds. The warning light will also flash .

The lamp goes out when the driver and passenger seat belts are fastened with the ignition switched on.

The protective function of seat belts

Fig. 75 Drivers with properly worn seat belts will not be thrown forward in the event of sudden braking

Properly worn seat belts hold the occupants in the proper position. They also help prevent uncontrolled movements that may result in serious injury and reduce the risk of being thrown out of the vehicle in case of an accident.

Vehicle occupants wearing their seat belts correctly benefit greatly from the ability of the belts to absorb kinetic energy. In addition, the front part of your vehicle and other passive safety features (such as the airbag system) are designed to absorb the kinetic energy released in a collision. Taken together, all these features reduce the releasing kinetic energy and consequently, the risk of injury. »

[1] Depending on the model version

This is why it is so important to fasten seat belts before every trip, even when "just driving around the corner".

Ensure that your passengers wear their seat belts as well. Accident statistics have shown that wearing seat belts is an effective means of substantially reducing the risk of injury and improving the chances of survival when involved in a serious accident. Furthermore, properly worn seat belts improve the protection provided by airbags in the event of an accident. For this reason, wearing a seat belt is required by law in most countries.

Although your vehicle is equipped with airbags, the seat belts must be fastened and worn. The front airbags, for example, are only triggered in some cases of head-on collision. The front airbags will not be triggered during minor frontal or side collisions, rear-end collisions, rollovers or accidents in which the airbag trigger threshold value in the control unit is not exceeded.

Therefore, you should always wear your seat belt and ensure that all vehicle occupants have fastened their seat belts properly before you drive off!

Safety instructions on using seat belts

– Always wear the seat belt as described in this section.

– Ensure that the seat belts can be fastened at all times and are not damaged.

⚠ WARNING

- **If seat belts are worn incorrectly or not at all, the risk of severe injuries increases. The optimal protection from seat belts can be achieved only if you use them properly.**
- **Fasten your seat belt before every trip - even when driving in town. Other vehicle occupants must also wear the seat belts at all times, otherwise they run the risk of being injured.**
- **The seat belt cannot offer its full protection if the seat belt is not positioned correctly.**
- **Never allow two passengers (even children) to share the same seat belt.**
- **Always keep both feet in the footwell in front of your seat as long as the vehicle is in motion.**
- **Never unbuckle a seat belt while the vehicle is in motion. Risk of fatal injury.**
- **The seat belt must never be twisted while it is being worn.**
- **The seat belt should never lie on hard or fragile objects (such as glasses or pens, etc.) because this can cause injuries.**
- **Do not allow the seat belt to be damaged or jammed, or to rub on any sharp edges.**
- **Never wear the seat belt under the arm or in any other incorrect position.**
- **Loose, bulky clothing (such as an overcoat over a jacket) impairs the proper fit and function of the seat belts, reducing their capacity to protect.**
- **The slot in the seat belt buckle must not be blocked with paper or other objects, as this can prevent the latch plate from engaging securely.**
- **Never use seat belt clips, fastening rings or similar items to alter the position of the belt webbing.**
- **Frayed or torn seat belts or damage to the connections, belt retractors or parts of the buckle could cause severe injuries in the event of an accident. Therefore, you must check the condition of all seat belts at regular intervals.**
- **Seat belts which have been worn in an accident and stretched must be replaced by a specialised workshop. Renewal may be necessary even if there is no apparent damage. The belt anchorage should also be checked.**
- **Do not attempt to repair a damaged seat belt yourself. The seat belts must not be removed or modified in any way.**
- **The belts must be kept clean, otherwise the retractors may not work properly** **»» page 198.**

Physical principles of a frontal collision

Fig. 76 A driver not wearing a seat belt is thrown forward violently

Fig. 77 The unbelted passenger in the rear seat is thrown forward violently, hitting the driver wearing a seat belt

It is easy to explain how the laws of physics work in the case of a head-on collision: when a vehicle starts moving, a type of energy called “kinetic energy” is created both in the passengers and inside the vehicle.

The amount of “kinetic energy” depends on the speed of the vehicle and the weight of the vehicle and its passengers. The higher the speed and the greater the weight, the more energy there is to be “absorbed” in an accident.

The most significant factor, however, is the speed of the vehicle. If the speed doubles from 25 km/h (15 mph) to 50 km/h (30 mph), for example, the corresponding kinetic energy is multiplied by four.

Because the vehicle occupants in our example are not restrained by seat belts, in the event of crashing against a wall, all of the occupants' kinetic energy will be absorbed solely by said impact.

Even at speeds of 30 km/h (19 mph) to 50 km/h (30 mph), the forces acting on bodies in a collision can easily exceed one tonne (1000 kg). At greater speed these forces are even higher.

Vehicle occupants not wearing seat belts are not “attached” to the vehicle. In a head-on collision, they will move forward at the same speed their vehicle was travelling just before the impact. This example applies not only to head-on collisions, but to all accidents and collisions.

Even at low speeds the forces acting on the body in a collision are so great that it is not possible to brace oneself with one's hands. In a frontal collision, unbelted passengers are thrown forward and will make violent contact with the steering wheel, dash panel, windscreen or whatever else is in the way ››› Fig. 76.

It is also important for rear passengers to wear seat belts properly, as they could otherwise be thrown forward violently through the vehicle interior in an accident. Passengers in the rear seats who do not use seat belts endanger not only themselves but also the front occupants ››› Fig. 77.

How to properly adjust your seatbelt

Fastening and unfastening the seat belt

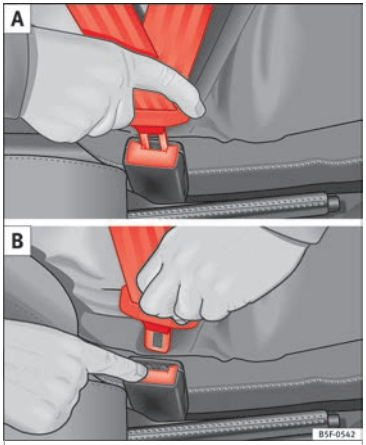


Fig. 78 Positioning and removing the seat belt buckle.

Fig. 79 Placing the seat belt in the shoulder and pelvis area for pregnant women.

Fasten your seat belt

The seat belt cannot offer its full protection if the seat belt is not positioned correctly.

- Adjust the seat and head restraint correctly.
- To fasten the belt, take hold of the latch plate and pull it slowly across your chest and lap.
- Insert the latch plate into the buckle for the appropriate seat and push it down until it is securely locked with an audible click ››› **Fig. 78 A**.
- Pull the belt to ensure that the latch plate is securely engaged in the buckle.

The seat belts are equipped with an automatic retractor on the shoulder strap. Full freedom of movement is permitted when the shoulder belt is pulled slowly. However, during sudden braking, during travel in steep areas or bends and during acceleration, the automatic retractor on the shoulder belt is locked.

The automatic belt retractors on the front seats are fitted with seat belt tensioners ››› page 65.

Seat belt release

- Press the red button on the belt buckle ››› **Fig. 78 B**. The latch plate is released and springs out ››› ⚠.
- Guide the belt back by hand so that it rolls up easily and the trim is not damaged.

Positioning seat belts

Seat belts offer their maximum protection only when they are properly positioned.

The following features are available to adjust the seat belt in the shoulder region:

- belt height adjustment for the front seats.
- front seat height adjustment*.

⚠ WARNING

- **The seat belts offer best protection only when the backrests are in an upright position and the seat belts have been fastened properly.**
- **Never put the latch plate in the buckle of another seat. If you do this, the seat belt will**

not protect you properly and the risk of injury is increased.

- **Never unbuckle a seat belt while the vehicle is in motion. If you do, you increase the risk of sustaining severe or fatal injuries.**
- **An incorrectly worn seat belt can cause severe injuries in the event of an accident.**
- **The shoulder part of the seat belt must lie on the centre of the shoulder, never across the neck. The seat belt must lie flat and fit comfortably on the torso**
- **The lap part of the seat belt must lie across the pelvis, never across the stomach. The seat belt must lie flat and fit comfortably on the pelvis Pull the belt tight if necessary to take up any slack.**
- **For pregnant women, the lap part of the seat belt must lie as low as possible over the pelvis, never across the stomach, and always lie flat so that no pressure is exerted on the abdomen** **›› Fig. 79.**
- **Always engage the retractor lock when you are securing a child seat in group 0, 0+ or 1** **›› page 72.**
- **Read and observe the warnings** **›› page 62.**

Belt height adjustment

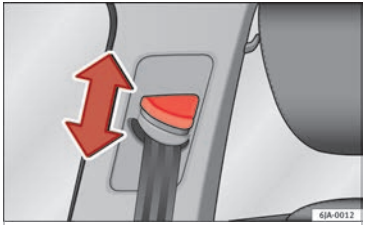


Fig. 80 Location of the belt height adjuster.

The seat belt adjuster for the front seats can be used to adjust the proper belt position at the shoulder.

– Press the upper part of the shoulder belt guide and hold it in this position **›› Fig. 80**.

– Move the shoulder belt guide up or down until you have adjusted the seat belt **›› page 64**.

– After adjusting, pull the shoulder belt sharply to check that the catch on the shoulder belt guide is engaged securely.

Seat belt tensioners

How the seat belt tensioner works

Read the additional information carefully **›› page 13**.

The seat belts for the occupants in the front seats are equipped with belt tensioners. Sensors will trigger the belt tensioners only during severe head-on, lateral and rear-end collisions and only if the seat belt is worn. This retracts and tightens the seat belts, reducing the forward motion of the occupants.

The belt tensioners will not be triggered in the event of minor collisions, if the vehicle overturns, or in accidents where no major forces act on the vehicle.

Note

- **If the seat belt tensioners are triggered, a fine dust is produced. This is normal and it is not an indication of fire in the vehicle.**
- **The relevant safety requirements must be observed when the vehicle or components of the system are scrapped. Specialised workshops are familiar with these regulations, which are also available to you.**

Service and disposal of belt tensioners

The belt tensioners are components of the seat belts that are installed in the seats of your vehicle. If you work on the belt tensioners or remove and install parts of the system when performing other repair work, the seat belt may be damaged. The consequence may be that, in the event of an accident, the belt tensioners function incorrectly or may not function at all.

So that the effectiveness of the seat belt tensioner is not reduced and that removed parts do not cause any injuries or environmental pollution, regulations, which are known to the specialised workshops, must be observed.

⚠ WARNING

- **Improper use or repairs not carried out by qualified mechanics increase the risk of severe or fatal injuries. The belt tensioners may fail to trigger or may trigger in the wrong circumstances.**
- **Never attempt to repair, adjust, remove or install parts of the belt tensioners or seat belts.**
- **The seat belt tensioner, seat belt and automatic retractor cannot be repaired.**
- **Any work on the belt tensioners and seat belts, including the removal and refitting of system parts in conjunction with other repair work, must be performed by a specialised workshop only.**
- **The belt tensioners will only provide protection for one accident and must be changed if they have been activated.**

Airbag system

Brief introduction

Why is it so important to wear a seat belt and to sit correctly?

For the inflating airbags to achieve the best protection, the seat belt must always be worn properly and the correct sitting position must be assumed.

The airbag system is not a substitute for seat belts, but it is an integral part of the vehicle's overall passive safety system. Please bear in mind that the airbag system can only work effectively when the vehicle occupants are wearing their seat belts correctly and have adjusted the head restraints properly. Therefore, it is most important to wear the seat belts at all times, not only because this is required by law in most countries, but also for your safety »» **page 61, The whys and wherefores of seat belts**.

The airbag inflates in a matter of seconds, so if you are not properly seated when the airbag is triggered, you may sustain fatal injuries. Therefore, it is essential that all vehicle occupants assume a correct sitting position while travelling.

Sharp braking before an accident may cause a passenger not wearing a seat belt to be thrown forward into the area of the deploying

airbag. In this case, the inflating airbag may inflict critical or fatal injuries on the occupant. This also applies to children.

Always maintain the greatest possible distance between yourself and the front airbag. This way, the front airbags can completely deploy when triggered, providing their maximum protection.

The most important factors that will trigger an airbag are: the type of accident, the angle of collision and the speed of the vehicle.

Whether or not the airbags are triggered depends primarily on the vehicle deceleration rate resulting from the collision and detected by the control unit. If the vehicle deceleration occurring during the collision and measured by the control unit remains below the specified reference values, the front, side and/or curtain airbags will not be triggered. Take into account that the visible damage in a vehicle involved in an accident, no matter how serious, is not a determining factor for the airbags to have been triggered.

⚠ WARNING

- **Wearing the seat belt incorrectly or assuming an incorrect sitting position can lead to critical or fatal injuries.**
- **All vehicle occupants, including children, who are not properly belted can sustain critical or fatal injuries if the airbag is triggered. Children up to 12 years old should always travel on the rear seat. Never transport children in the vehicle if they are not restrained or the restraint system is not appropriate for their age, size or weight.**
- **If you are not wearing a seat belt, or if you lean forward or to the side while travelling or assume an incorrect sitting position, there is a substantially increased risk of injury. This increased risk of injury will be further increased if you are struck by an inflating airbag.**
- **To reduce the risk of injury from an inflating airbag, always wear the seat belt properly** **››› page 61****.**
- **Always adjust the front seats properly.**

Description of airbag system

The airbag system mainly comprises (as per vehicle equipment):

- an electronic control and monitoring system (control unit)
- frontal airbags for driver and passenger,
- side airbags,
- curtain airbags,
- a control lamp on the dash panel **››› page 68**.
- key-operated switch for front passenger airbag,
- a control lamp for disabling/enabling the front passenger airbag.

The airbag system operation is monitored electronically. The airbag control lamp will illuminate for a few seconds every time the ignition is switched on (self-diagnosis).

There is a fault in the system if the control lamp :

- does not light up when the ignition is switched on **››› page 68**,
- turns off after 4 seconds after the ignition is switched on
- turns off and then lights up again after the ignition is switched on
- illuminates or flashes while the vehicle is moving.

The airbag system is not triggered if:

- the ignition is switched off
- there is a minor frontal collision
- there is a minor side collision
- there is a rear-end collision
- the vehicle turns over.

⚠ WARNING

- **The seat belts and airbags can only provide maximum protection if the occupants are seated correctly** **››› page 56, Correct position for passengers****.**
- **If a fault has occurred in the airbag system, have the system checked immediately by a specialised workshop. Otherwise, during a**

»

frontal collision the system might not trigger correctly or may fail to trigger at all.

Airbag activation

The airbags deploy extremely rapidly, within thousandths of a second, to provide additional protection in the event of an accident. A fine dust may develop when the airbag deploys. This is normal and it is not an indication of fire in the vehicle.

The airbag system is only ready to function when the ignition is on.

In special accidents instances, several airbags may activate at the same time.

In the event of minor head-on and side collisions, rear-end collisions, overturning or rollover of the vehicle, airbags **do not activate**.

Activation factors

The conditions that lead to the airbag system activating in each situation cannot be generalised. Some factors play an important role, such as the properties of the object the vehicle hits (hard/soft), angle of impact, vehicle speed, etc.

Deceleration trajectory is key for airbag activation.

The control unit analyses the collision trajectory and activates the respective restraint system.

If the deceleration rate is below the predefined reference value in the control unit the airbags will not be triggered, even though the accident may cause extensive damage to the car.

The following airbags are triggered in serious head-on collisions

- Driver airbag.
- Front passenger front airbag

The following airbags are triggered in serious side-on collisions

- Front side airbag on the side of the accident.
- Rear side airbag on the side of the accident.
- Curtain (head) airbag on the side of the accident.

In an accident with airbag activation:

- the interior lights switch on (if the interior light switch is in the courtesy light position);
- the hazard warning lights switch on;
- all doors are unlocked;
- the fuel supply to the engine is cut.

Airbag and seat belt tensioner control lamp

The control lamp monitors all airbags and seat belt tensioners in the vehicle, including control units and wiring connections.

Monitoring of airbag and belt tensioner system

Both the airbag and belt tensioner systems operation is constantly monitored electronically. Each time the ignition is switched on, the control lamp illuminates for several seconds (self-diagnosis) and the instrument panel display* shows **AIRBAG/TENSIONER.**

The system must be checked when the control lamp :

- does not light up when the ignition is switched on,
- turns off after 4 seconds after the ignition is switched on
- turns off and then lights up again after the ignition is switched on
- illuminates or flashes while the vehicle is moving.

In the event of a malfunction, the warning lamp stays on continuously. In addition, depending on the malfunction, a fault message appears on the instrument panel display for approximately 10 seconds and a short audible warning is given. In this event, you

should have a specialised workshop check the system immediately.

The airbag system availability is controlled electronically, regardless of whether an airbag is disabled.

If the front airbag, side airbag, head protection airbag or the belt tensioner are disabled using the diagnostics system:

- After switching on the ignition, the warning lamp illuminates for about 4 seconds and flashes for another 12 seconds.

The informative display indicates:

`Airbag/belt tensioner disabled!`

If the front passenger airbag has been disabled with the airbag switch located in the storage compartment side:

- When the ignition is turned on, the warning lamp illuminates for about 4 seconds.
- The airbag is disabled, signalled with the warning lamp **OFF** which lights up with the word **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** placed in the centre part of the dash panel ››› Fig. 81 ››› page 71.

⚠ WARNING

- **If there is a malfunction, the airbag and belt tensioner system cannot properly perform its protective function.**
- **If a malfunction occurs, have the system checked immediately by a specialised workshop. Otherwise, in the event of an accident, the airbag system and belt tensioners may not be triggered, or may not be triggered correctly.**

Airbag safety instructions

Front airbags

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 14.

⚠ WARNING

- **The deployment space between the front passengers and the airbags must not in any case be occupied by other passenger, pets and objects.**
- **The airbags provide protection for just one accident; replace them once they have deployed.**
- **It is also important not to attach any objects such as cup holders or telephone mountings to the surfaces covering the airbag units.**
- **Do not attempt to modify components of the airbag system in any way.**
- **When driving, always hold the steering wheel with both hands on the outside part at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions. Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position, or in any other manner (e.g. in the centre of the steering wheel). In such cases, if the airbag is triggered, you may sustain injuries to the arms, hands and head.**

Side airbags*

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 15.

⚠ WARNING

- **If you do not wear a seat belt, if you lean forward, or are not seated correctly while the vehicle is in motion, you are at a greater risk of injury if the side airbag system is triggered in an accident.**
- **In order for the side airbags to provide their maximum protection, the prescribed sitting position must always be maintained with seat belts fastened while travelling.**
- **Occupants of the outer seats must never carry any objects or pets in the deployment space between them and the airbags, or allow children or other passengers to travel in this position. It is also important not to attach any accessories (such as cup holders) to the doors. This would impair the protection offered by the side airbags.**
- **The built-in coat hooks should be used only for lightweight clothing. Do not leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets.**

»

- Great forces, such as hard blows or kicks, must not be exerted upon the backrest bolster because the system may be damaged. In this case, the side airbags would not be triggered.
- Under no circumstances should protective covers be fitted over seats with side airbags unless the covers have been approved for use in your vehicle. Because the airbag deploys from the side of the backrest, the use of conventional seat covers would obstruct the side airbag, seriously reducing the airbag's effectiveness.
- Any damage to the original seat upholstery or around the seams of the side airbag units must be repaired immediately by a specialised workshop.
- The airbags provide protection for just one accident; replace them once they have deployed.
- Any work on the side airbag system or removal and installation of the airbag components for other repairs (such as removal of the front seat) should only be performed by a specialised workshop. Otherwise, faults may occur during the airbag system operation.
- Do not attempt to modify components of the airbag system in any way.
- The side and head airbags are managed through sensors located in the interior of the front doors. To ensure the correct operation of the side and curtain (head) airbags neither the doors nor the door panels should be modified in any way (e.g. fitting loudspeakers). If the front door is damaged, the airbag system may not work correctly. All work carried out on the front door must be done in a specialised workshop.
- In a side-on collision the side airbags will not work if the sensors do not correctly measure the pressure increase on the interior of the doors, due to air escaping through the areas with holes or openings in the door panel.
- Never drive the vehicle if the interior panels have been removed.
- Never drive if the interior door panels have been removed or if the panels have not been correctly fitted.
- Never drive the vehicle if the loudspeakers in the door panels have been removed, unless the holes left by the loudspeakers have been closed properly.
- Always check that the openings are closed or covered if loudspeakers or other equipment are fitted inside the door panels.
- Any work carried out to the doors should be made in an authorised specialised workshop.

Curtain airbags*

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 16.

⚠ WARNING

- In order for the head-protection airbags to provide their maximum protection, the prescribed sitting position must always be maintained with seat belts fastened while travelling.
- For safety reasons, the curtain airbag must be disabled in those vehicles fitted with a screen dividing the interior of the vehicle. See your technical service to make this adjustment.
- There must be no other persons, animals or objects between the occupants of the rear seats and the deployment space of the head-protection airbags so that the head-protection airbag can deploy without restriction and provide the greatest possible protection. Therefore, sun blinds which have not been expressly approved for use in your vehicle may not be attached to the side windows
- The built-in coat hooks should be used only for lightweight clothing. Do not leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets. Please, do not hang the clothes on coat hangers.
- The airbags provide protection for just one accident; replace them once they have deployed.
- Any work on the head-protection airbag system or removal and installation of the airbag components for other repairs (such as removal of the roof lining) should only be performed by a specialised workshop. Otherwise, faults may occur during the airbag system operation.
- Do not attempt to modify components of the airbag system in any way.

• The side and head airbags are managed through sensors located in the interior of the front doors. To ensure the correct operation of the side and curtain airbags neither the doors nor the door panels should be modified in any way (e.g. fitting loudspeakers). If the front door is damaged, the airbag system may not work correctly. All work carried out on the front door must be done in a specialised workshop.

Deactivating airbags

Deactivation of the front airbag

The disabling of airbags is only carried out in certain cases, i.e. if:

• a child seat is required in the front passenger seat with the child facing in the opposite direction to the direction of travel (in some countries, due to divergent legal requirements, facing in the direction of travel) ››› page 74;

• despite the driver's seat being in the correct position, a minimum distance of 25 cm cannot be maintained between the centre of the steering wheel and the driver's torso,

• installation of special devices is required in the steering wheel area due to a physical disability,

• if you have special seats installed (e.g. an orthopaedic seat without side airbags).

The front passenger front airbag can be disabled using the switch ››› page 71.

We recommend that you contact an authorised SEAT dealer for the disabling of other airbags.

Airbag system control

The airbag system availability is controlled electronically, regardless of whether an airbag is disabled.

If an airbag was disabled using a diagnostics system:

• the airbag system warning lamp illuminates after switching on the ignition for about 4 seconds, and then flashes for about 12 seconds.

If the airbag has been disabled with the airbag switch on the side of the dash panel:

• the airbag control lamp will illuminate for about 4 seconds after the ignition is switched on,

• the airbag is disabled, signalled with the warning lamp **OFF**, which lights up with the word **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF**, placed in the centre part of the dash panel ››› Fig. 81 ③.

Note

• Follow the current legislation in your country regarding the disabling of airbags.

• At your authorised SEAT dealer you can find information on which vehicle airbags can be disabled.

Front passenger front airbag switch

Fig. 81 Front passenger front airbag switch/warning lamp for disabling the front passenger airbag.

»

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 14.

The switch disables only the front passenger front airbag.

Switching on the airbag

– Switch the ignition off.

– Open the passenger side storage compartment.

– Insert the key into the slot of the switch for deactivating the front passenger airbag ››› Fig. 81. About 3/4 of the key should enter, as far as it will go.

– Then turn the key gently to the **ON** position. Do not force it if you feel resistance, and make sure you have inserted the key fully.

– Close the passenger side storage compartment.

– Check, with the ignition switched on, that the **OFF** control lamp does not illuminate, with the words **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** in the centre of the dash panel.

Control lamp with the word PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF (front passenger airbag disabled)

If the front passenger front airbag is **disabled**, after switching on the ignition, the control lamp will illuminate for several seconds, then it will switch off for about 1 s and then switch on again.

If the control lamp is flashing, there is a fault in the disabling of the airbag system ›››. **Please go immediately to an Official Service.**

⚠ WARNING

- **The driver of the vehicle is responsible for disabling or switching on the airbag.**
- **Always switch off the ignition before disabling the front passenger airbag! Failure to do so could result in a fault in the airbag disabling system.**
- **Never leave the key in the airbag disabling switch as it could get damaged or enable or disable the airbag during driving.**
- **If the OFF (airbag disabled) control lamp flashes, the front passenger front airbag will not trigger in the event of an accident! Have the system immediately checked by an Official Service.**

Transporting children safely

Safety for children

Introduction

For safety reasons, as we have learned from accident statistics, we recommend that children under 12 years of age travel in the rear seats. Depending on their age, height and weight, children travelling in rear seats must use a child seat or a seat belt. For safety reasons, the child seat should be installed in the rear seat, behind the front passenger seat or in the centre back seat.

The physical laws involved and the forces acting in a collision apply also to children ››› page 63. But unlike adults, children do not have fully developed muscle and bone structures. This means that children are subject to a greater risk of injury.

To reduce the risk of injuries, children must always use special child restraint systems when travelling in the vehicle.

We recommend the use of child safety products from the SEAT Original Accessories Programme, which includes systems for all ages made by “Peke” (not for all countries).

These systems have been especially designed and approved, complying with the ECE-R44. regulation.

Follow the manufacturer's instructions and observe any statutory requirements when installing and using child seats. Always read and note ››› page 73.

We recommend you always carry the manufacturer's Child Seat Instruction Manual together with the on-board documentation.

Important information regarding the front passenger's airbag

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 16.

Read and always observe the safety information included in the following chapters:

- Safety distance with respect to the passenger airbag ››› page 66, **Why is it so important to wear a seat belt and to sit correctly?**.
- Objects between the passenger and the passenger side airbag ››› ⚠ **in Front airbags on page 69**.

The passenger side front airbag, when enabled, is a serious risk for a child that is facing backward since the airbag can strike the seat with such force that it can cause serious or fatal injuries. Children up to 12 years old should always travel on the rear seat.

Therefore we strongly recommend you to transport children on the rear seats. This is the safest location in the vehicle. Alternatively, the front passenger airbag can be disabled with a key-operated switch ››› page 71. When transporting children, use a child seat suitable for the age and size of each child ››› page 72.

⚠ WARNING

- **If a child seat is secured to the front passenger seat, the risk to the child of sustaining critical or fatal injuries in the event of an accident increases.**
- **An inflating front passenger airbag can strike the rear-facing child seat and project it with great force against the door, the roof or the backrest.**
- **Never install a child seat facing backwards on the front passenger seat unless the front passenger front airbag has been disabled. Risk of potentially fatal injuries to the child! However, if it is necessary, in exceptional cases, to transport a child in the front passenger seat, the front passenger front airbag must always be disabled** ››› page 71**. If the front passenger seat has a height adjustment option, move it to the highest position.**
- **For those vehicles that do not include a key lock switch to deactivate the airbag, the vehicle must be taken to a technical service.**
- **All vehicle occupants, especially children, must assume the proper sitting position and be properly belted in while travelling.**
- **Never hold children or babies on your lap, this can result in potentially fatal injuries to the child!**
- **Never allow a child to be transported in a vehicle without being properly secured, or to stand up or kneel on a seat while travelling. In an accident, the child could be flung through the vehicle, causing possibly fatal injuries to themselves and to the other vehicle occupants.**
- **If children assume an improper sitting position when the vehicle is moving, they expose themselves to greater risk of injury in the event of a sudden braking manoeuvre or in an accident. This is particularly important if the child is travelling on the front passenger seat and the airbag system is triggered in an accident; as this could cause serious injury or even death.**
- **A suitable child seat can protect your child!**
- **Never leave a child alone in the child seat or inside the vehicle because depending on the season, very high temperatures may be reached inside a parked vehicle, which could be fatal.**
- **Children who are less than 1.5 metres tall must not wear a normal seat belt without a child seat, as this could cause injuries to the abdominal and neck areas during a sudden braking manoeuvre or in an accident.**
- **Only one child may occupy a child seat** ››› page 74, **Child seats**.

Child seats

Safety instructions

Read the additional information carefully **›››** **page 16**.

⚠ WARNING

- **When travelling, children must be secured in the vehicle with a restraint system suitable for age, weight and size.**
- **Read and always observe information and warnings concerning the use of child seats** **›››** **page 73**.

⚠ WARNING

- **The retaining rings are designed only for use with "ISOFIX" and Top Tether* system child seats.**
- **Never secure other child seats that do not have the "ISOFIX" or Top Tether* system, or retaining belts or objects to the fastening rings - this can result in potentially fatal injuries to the child.**
- **Ensure that the child seat is secured correctly using the "ISOFIX" and Top Tether* securing rings.**

Categorisation of child seats into groups

Use only child seats that are officially approved and suitable for the child.

Child seats are subject to the regulation ECE-R 44. ECE-R stands for: Economic Commission for Europe Regulation.

The child seats are grouped into 5 categories:

Group 0: Up to 10 kg (up to around 9 months)

Group 0+: Up to 13 kg (up to around 18 months)

Group 1: from 9 to 18 kg (up to approx. 4 years old)

Group 2: from 15 to 25 kg (up to approx. 7 years old)

Group 3: From 22 to 36 kg (over around 7 years old)

Child seats that have been tested and approved under the ECE R44 standard bear the test mark on the seat (the letter E in a circle with the test number below it).

Follow the manufacturer's instructions and observe any statutory requirements when installing and using child seats.

We recommend you to always include the manufacturer's Child Seat Instruction Manual together with the on-board documentation.

SEAT recommends you use child seats from the **Original Accessories Catalogue**. These child seats have been designed and tested for use in SEAT vehicles. You can find the right child seat for your model and age group at SEAT dealers.

⚠ WARNING

Read and always observe information and warnings concerning the use of child seats **›››** **page 73**.

Emergencies

Self-help

Emergency equipment

First-aid kit and warning triangle*

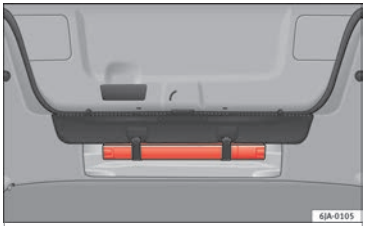


Fig. 82 Location of the warning triangle.

The warning triangle, measuring max. 436 x 45 x 32 mm, can be secured to the lining on the rear of the luggage compartment with rubber straps ››› **Fig. 82**.

⚠ WARNING

The first-aid kit and fire extinguisher must be properly secured so that they are not catapulted through the vehicle during driving and braking manoeuvres or in the event of an accident. Risk of injury.

Note

- **Observe the expiry date of the contents of the first aid kit.**
- **We recommend you use the first-aid kit and the warning triangle from the SEAT Original Accessories programme available in authorised SEAT dealers.**

Fire extinguisher*

Read the instructions given on the fire extinguisher carefully.

The fire extinguisher must be checked once a year by an authorised person (take the applicable legal regulations into account).

⚠ WARNING

The fire extinguisher must be properly secured so that it is not catapulted through the vehicle, causing injuries, during driving and braking manoeuvres or in the event of an accident.

Note

- **The fire extinguisher must comply with local legal requirements.**
- **Observe the expiry date of the fire extinguisher. The fire extinguisher may not work properly if used after the expiry date.**

Vehicle tool kit*

Read the additional information carefully
››› page 46

⚠ WARNING

- **The factory-supplied jack is only designed for changing wheels on this model of vehicle. On no account attempt to use it for lighting heavier vehicles or other loads. Risk of injury!**
- **Make sure that the vehicle tools are stored properly in the luggage compartment.**

Note

- **Make sure the box always remains strapped to the spare wheel with tape.**
- **The jack does not generally require any maintenance. If required, it should be greased using universal type grease.**

Changing a wheel

Introduction

Read the additional information carefully
››› page 46

⚠ WARNING

- **If you have a puncture in moving traffic, switch on the hazard warning lights and place the warning triangle at the obligatory** »

distance. Observe applicable local legal regulations. This is for your own safety and that of other drivers.

- If you have a flat tyre, stop the vehicle as far away as possible from moving traffic. Stop on flat, solid ground.
- If you have to change the tyre on a gradient, block the wheel opposite the wheel being changed by placing a stone or similar object under it to prevent the vehicle from rolling away unexpectedly.
- If the vehicle has been fitted with tyres or alloys that are different to those fitted in manufacture, the instructions ››› page 217, New tyres or wheels must be followed.
- Always raise the vehicle with the doors closed.
- Never place parts of your body, e.g. arms and legs, underneath the vehicle when it is supported only by the jack.
- Secure the base of the jack with suitable supports so that it cannot slip. The jack could slide if the ground below it is soft and slippery and the vehicle could slip off it. Therefore, place the jack on a firm surface or use a large, stable base. On a slippery surface, e.g. tile, use a non-slip base such as a rubber mat.
- Never start the engine when the vehicle is jacked. Risk of injury.
- The jack should only be used in the correct jacking points.

CAUTION

- The prescribed tightening torque for wheel bolts on steel and alloy wheels is 120 Nm.
- If the anti-theft wheel bolt is overly tightened, this could damage the bolt and the adapter.

Note

- The set of anti-theft wheel bolts or the adapter are available from authorised SEAT dealers.
- Please observe the relevant local legal regulations when changing the wheel.

Wheel bolts

The **wheel bolts** are matched to the rims. When installing different wheels, e.g. to fit light alloy wheels or wheels with winter tyres, it is important to use the correct wheel bolts with the right length and correctly shaped bolt heads. This is essential for a secure fit of the wheels and for proper operation of the brake system.

Note

- Never grease or oil the wheel bolts!
- If the wheel bolt is very tight, it may be possible to loosen it by pushing down the end of the box spanner carefully with your foot. Hold on to the vehicle for support and take care not to slip.
- If you notice that the wheel bolts are rusty and difficult to turn when changing a wheel, they must be replaced before having the tightening torque checked.

Tyre repairs

TMS Anti-puncture kit (Tyre Mobility System)*

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 45

The Tyre Mobility System is stored in a box under the carpet in the boot.

Using the Tyre Mobility System you can reliably seal tyres damaged by foreign bodies, provided that cuts or punctures are no larger than approx. 4 mm in diameter. Do not remove the foreign bodies, e.g. bolts or nails, from the tyre!

The tyre must be repaired immediately.

The repair made using the Tyre Mobility System **under no circumstances replaces** permanent tyre repair and should only be used to drive to the nearest official service.

The Tyre Mobility System kit shall not be used:

- If the wheel rim has been damaged,
- when the outside temperature is below -20°C (-4°F),
- on slashes or punctures larger than 4 mm,
- if the sidewall of the wheel has been damaged,
- If you have been driving with very low tyre pressure or a completely flat tyre
- If the best-before date on the air can has expired

⚠ WARNING

Using the tyre mobility system can be dangerous, especially when filling the tyre at the roadside. Please observe the following rules to minimise the risk of injury:

- **Stop the vehicle safely as soon as possible. Park it at a safe distance from surrounding traffic to fill the tyre.**
- **Ensure the ground on which you park is flat and solid.**
- **All passengers and particularly children must keep a safe distance from the work area.**
- **Turn on the hazard warning lights to warn other road users.**
- **Use the tyre mobility system only if you are familiar with the necessary procedures. Otherwise, you should seek professional assistance.**
- **The tyre mobility set is intended for temporary emergency use only until you can reach the nearest specialised workshop.**
- **Replace the repaired tyre with the tyre mobility set as soon as possible.**
- **The sealant is a health hazard and must be cleaned immediately if it comes into contact with the skin.**
- **Always keep the tyre mobility set out of the reach of small children.**
- **Never use an equivalent jack, even if it has been approved for your vehicle.**
- **Always stop the engine, apply the handbrake lever firmly and engage gear if using a manual gearbox, in order to reduce the risk of vehicle involuntary movement.**

⚠ WARNING

A tyre filled with sealant does not have the same performance properties as a conventional tyre.

- **Never drive faster than 80 km/h (50 mph).**
- **Avoid heavy acceleration, hard braking and fast cornering.**
- **Drive for only 10 minutes at a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph) and then check the tyre.**

For the sake of the environment

Dispose of used or expired sealant observing any legal requirements.

Note

- **A new bottle of sealant can be purchased at SEAT dealerships.**
- **Take into account the separate instruction manual of the tyre mobility set* manufacturer.**

Components of the tyre mobility set*

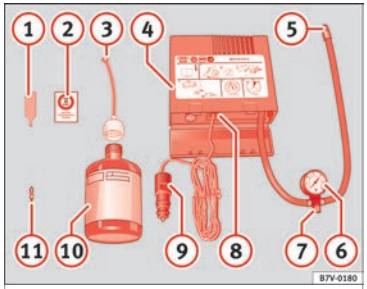


Fig. 83 Standard representation: contents of the anti-puncture kit.

The anti-puncture kit is located underneath the floor covering in the luggage compartment. It includes the following components ›› **Fig. 83**:

1. Tyre valve remover
2. Sticker indicating maximum speed “max. 80 km/h” or “max. 50 mph” »

(3) Filler tube with cap
(4) Air compressor
(5) Tube for inflating tyres
(6) Warning provided by tyre pressure monitoring system (it can also be integrated in the compressor).
(7) Air bleed screw (in its place, the compressor may have a button).
(8) ON/OFF switch
(9) 12 volt connector
(10) Bottle of sealant
(11) Spare tyre valve

The **valve insert remover** (1) has a gap at the lower end for a valve insert. The valve insert can only be screwed or unscrewed in this way. This also applies to its replacement part (11).

⚠ WARNING

When inflating the wheel, the air compressor and the inflator tube may become hot.

- **Protect hands and skin from hot parts.**
- **Do not place the hot flexible inflator tube or hot air compressor on flammable material.**
- **Allow them to cool before storing the device.**
- **If it is not possible to inflate the tyre to at least 2.0 bars (29 psi / 200 kPa), the tyre is too badly damaged. The sealant is not in a good condition to seal the tyre. Do not continue driving. Seek specialist assistance.**

CAUTION

Switch off the air compressor after a maximum of 8 operational minutes to avoid overheating! Before switching on the air compressor again, let it cool for several minutes.

Check after 10 minutes of driving

Screw the inflator tube ››› Fig. 83 (5) again and check the pressure on the gauge (6).

1.3 bar (19 psi / 130 kPa) and lower:

- **Stop the vehicle!** The tyre cannot be sealed sufficiently with the tyre mobility set.
- You should obtain professional assistance ››› ⚠.

1.4 bar (20 psi / 140 kPa) and higher:

- Set the tyre pressure to the correct value again.
- Carefully resume your journey until you reach the nearest specialised workshop without exceeding 80 km/h (50 mph).
- Have the damaged tyre replaced.

⚠ WARNING

Driving with an unsealed tyre is dangerous and can cause accidents and serious injury.

- **Do not continue driving if the tyre pressure is 1.3 bar (19 psi / 130 kPa) and lower.**
- **Seek specialist assistance.**

Towing the vehicle

Introduction

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 50.

Vehicles with manual gearbox can be towed using a towbar or towrope. They can also be towed with either the front or rear wheels lifted off the road.

Vehicles with automatic gearbox can be towed using a towbar or towrope. They can also be towed with the front wheels lifted off the road. If the vehicle is towed with the rear wheels lifted off the road the automatic gearbox will be damaged!

Maximum towing speed is **50 km/h (31 mph)**.

CAUTION

- **Do not tow-start the engine. Risk of engine damage! In vehicles with a catalytic converter, fuel that has not been burned could reach the catalytic converter and catch fire in it. This could damage and destroy the catalytic converter. You may use the battery from another vehicle to help you start your engine** **»» page 52.**
- **If, due to a fault, there is no oil in the gearbox, the car may only be towed with the driven wheels lifted clear of the road and transported on a special vehicle transporter or trailer.**
- **If normal towing is not possible or if the vehicle is to be towed for further than 50 km, the vehicle must be transported on a special vehicle transporter or trailer.**
- **The towrope should be slightly elastic to reduce the load on both vehicles during towing. It is advisable to use a towrope made of synthetic fibre or similar material only.**
- **Do not pull too hard with the towing vehicle and always take care to avoid jerking the towrope. When towing on a loose surface there is always a risk of overloading and damaging the anchorage points.**
- **Attach the towrope or towbar only to the towline anchorages or to the removable towing bracket** **»» page 184, or »» page 79.**

Note

- **We recommend you use the towrope or towbar available in the SEAT Original Accessories programme from authorised SEAT dealers.**
- **Towing a vehicle requires a certain degree of practical skill. Both drivers should be familiar with the technique required for towing. Inexperienced drivers should not attempt to tow away another vehicle or to have their vehicle towed.**
- **Note the legal regulations concerning towing, particularly those regarding the signalling of the towed and towing vehicle.**
- **The towrope must not be twisted, as under certain circumstances this could unscrew the front towline anchorage.**

Front towline anchorage

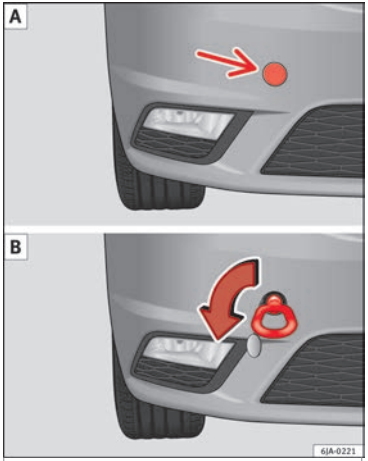


Fig. 84 Front bumper: towline anchorage cover/fitting.

Fitting and detaching the cover

– Press on the left of the cover as indicated by the arrow **»» Fig. 84** A.

– Pull on the cover to remove it from the front bumper.

– To refit the cover after unscrewing the towline anchorage, fit the cover and press »

down on its right-hand side. The cover must be securely engaged.

Fitting and detaching the towline anchorage

– Screw in the towline anchorage anti-clockwise by hand as far as it will go ››› Fig. 84 B.

To tighten the towline anchorage, we recommend using the box spanner, the towing eye from another vehicle or a similar object that can be inserted through the anchorage.

– Unscrew the towline anchorage by turning it clockwise.

CAUTION

The towline anchorage must be screwed in as far as it will go. Otherwise there is a risk of the screw connection shearing off during towing or tow-starting!

Fuses and bulbs

Fuses

Introduction

Due to the constant updating of vehicles, fuse assignments based on equipment and the use of the same fuse for various electrical components, it is not possible to provide an up-to-date summary of the fuse positions for the electrical components at the time this manual was printed. For detailed information about the fuse positions, please consult a technical service.

In general, a fuse can be assigned to various electrical components. Likewise, an electrical component can be protected by several fuses.

Only replace fuses when the cause of the problem has been solved. If a newly inserted fuse blows after a short time, you must have the electrical system checked by a specialised workshop as soon as possible.

Additional information and warnings:

- Working in the engine compartment ››› page 202.

WARNING

The high voltages in the electrical system can give serious electrical shocks, causing burns and even death!

- **Never touch the electrical wiring of the ignition system.**
- **Take care not to cause short circuits in the electrical system.**

WARNING

Using unsuitable fuses, repairing fuses or bridging a current circuit without fuses can cause a fire and serious injury.

- **Never use a fuse with a higher value. Only replace fuses with a fuse of the same amperage (same colour and markings) and size.**
- **Never repair a fuse.**
- **Never replace a fuse by a metal strip, staple or similar.**

CAUTION

- **To prevent damage to the vehicle's electric system, before replacing a fuse always turn off the ignition, the lights and all electrical elements and remove the key from the ignition.**
- **If you replace a fuse with higher-rating fuse, you could cause damage to another part of the electrical system.**

- **Protect the fuse boxes when open to prevent the entry of dust or humidity as they can damage the electrical system.**
- **Always carefully remove the fuse box covers and refit them correctly to avoid problems with your vehicle.**

Note

- **One component may have more than one fuse.**
- **Several components may run on a single fuse.**
- **In the vehicle, there are more fuses than those indicated in this chapter. These should only be changed by a specialised workshop.**
- **Positions not containing a fuse do not appear in the following tables.**
- **Some of the equipment listed in the tables below pertain only to certain versions of the model or are optional extras.**
- **Please note that the above lists, while correct at the time of printing, are subject to change.**

Fuses in the dash panel

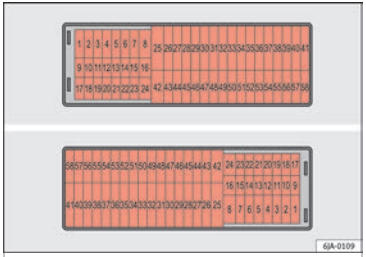


Fig. 85 Diagram of the fuse box to the left/right of the steering wheel

Read the additional information carefully
»» page 43

Only replace fuses with a fuse of the same amperage (same colour and markings) and size.

Fuse placement

No.	Consumer
1	Left light
2	Central locking, windscreen wipers, with Keyless Access
3	Ignition system relay
4	Right light
5	Electric windows - Driver
6	Central control unit - Interior lights
7	Horn
8	Towing bracket - Left light
9	Controls on steering column (without Keyless Access only), engine control unit (without Keyless Access only), automatic gearbox control unit (without Keyless Access only), automatic gearbox lever (without Keyless Access only), ESP control unit (without Keyless Access only), trailer hook control unit (without Keyless Access only), electric power steering (without Keyless Access only)
10	Rear left window
11	Headlight washer unit
12	Radio and navigation display
13	Preparation as taxi
14	Control lever under steering wheel, light switch, traction locking with ignition key (automatic transmission), headlight flasher, SmartGate control device, rain/light sensor, rear camera
15	Air conditioning system control unit, automatic gearbox selector lever, diagnostics connection
16	Instrument panel
17	Alarm sensor, horn
22	Windscreen washer system (without Keyless Access)
23	Heated front seats

»

No.	Consumer
24	Air conditioning fan, heating, control unit for air conditioning, heating
26	Front seat heating switch.
27	Rear window wiper
29	Airbag
30	Electric windows, reversing light switch, air conditioning control unit, Park Assist control unit, exterior mirror, power supply for middle button bar, power supply for the side button bar, interior mirror
31	Fuel pump, radiator fan control unit, cruise control, relay coil for the windscreen and rear window washer system, switch for the lights
32	Diagnostics socket, headlight range regulator, control lever under the steering wheel, ambient lighting regulator
33	Ignition relay coil, clutch pedal switch
34	Heatable washer jets of windscreen washer
36	USB charging socket
37	Radar
39	Additional electric heating
41	Rear window heater
42	Electric windows - passenger
43	Towing bracket - Connector contact

No.	Consumer
44	12 V connection in the interior, 12 V connection in the boot
45	Rear right window
46	Windshield and front window washing system, control lever under the steering wheel
47	Towing bracket - Connector contact
48	Towing bracket - Right hand light
49	Fuel pump control unit
50	Radio
51	Heat for exterior mirrors
52	Keyless Access
53	Steering lock (Keyless Access)
54	ABS/ESC control unit
56	Diagnosis
59	Full LED

Fuses in the engine compartment

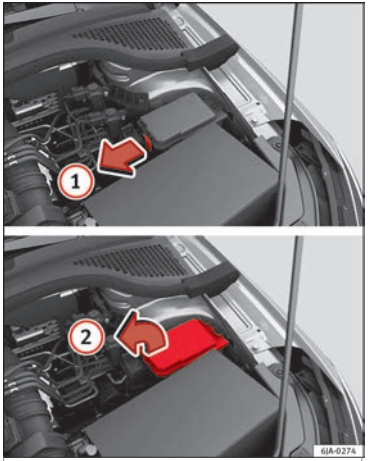


Fig. 86 In the engine compartment: fuse box cover - 1st variant

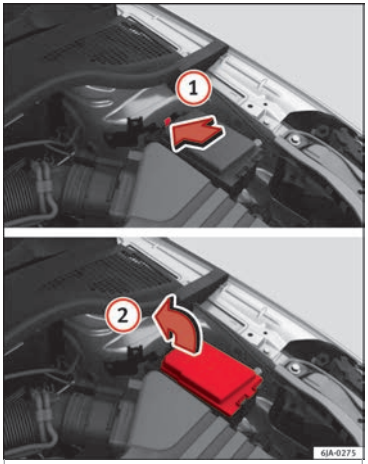


Fig. 87 In the engine compartment: fuse box cover - 2nd variant

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 43

Only replace fuses with a fuse of the same amperage (same colour and markings) and size.

Opening the fuse box

- Open the bonnet ⚠ ››› page 202.
- Press lid locking clip upwards in the direction of the arrow (1) ››› Fig. 86 o ››› Fig. 87.
- Open the cover in the direction indicated by the arrow (2).
- Remove the plastic clip from the lid of the fuse box.
- Replace the appropriate fuse.
- Place the plastic clip back in its original position.
- Place the lid on the fuse box and press until you hear it click into place.

Fuse placement

No.	Consumer
1	Radiator fan
2	Control unit for the glow system
3	ABS/ESC control unit
4	Additional electric heat - Circuit 2
5	Additional electric heat - Circuit 3
6	Automatic gearbox
7	Engine control unit
8	Front windscreen wipers
9	Central control unit, battery data module
10	ABS/ESC control unit
12	Engine components
13	Brake pedal switch
14	Engine components, fuel coil relay, radiator fan, coolant pump
15	Engine control unit
16	Starter motor
17	Engine control unit
18	Engine components, additional electric heat relay coils
19	Lambda probe
20	Control devices for the glow system, heating of the sump fan

Changing bulbs

Introduction

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 44.

Depending on how equipped the vehicle is, there are different sets of headlights and tail lights:

- Halogen main headlights (double headlight).
- Full-LED main headlights*.
- Rear bulb light.
- LED rear light*.

»

Full-LED headlight system*

Full-LED headlights handle all light functions (daylight, side light, turn signal, dipped beam and route light) with light emitting diodes (LEDs) as a light source.

Full-LED headlights are designed to last the lifetime of the car and light bulbs cannot be replaced. In case of headlight failure, go to an authorised workshop to have it replaced.

Double headlight bulb change

Changing bulbs requires a certain degree of practical skill. If in doubt, we recommend you have defective bulbs changed by a specialised service or, in case of an emergency, seek professional assistance.

- Switch off the ignition and all of the lights before changing a bulb.
- Do not touch the glass part of the bulb with your bare hands. The fingerprints left on the glass will vaporise as a result of the heat generated by the bulb, reducing bulb life and causing condensation on the reflector surface, thus reducing effectiveness.
- A bulb must only be replaced by one of the same type. The type is indicated on the bulb, either on the glass part or on the base.
- There is a storage area for the bulb box in the spare wheel well or below the carpet in the luggage compartment.

WARNING

- **Take particular care when working on components in the engine compartment if the engine is warm. Risk of burns.**
- **Bulbs are highly sensitive to pressure. The glass can break when you touch the bulb, causing injury.**
- **When changing bulbs, please take care not to injure yourself on sharp parts in the headlight housing.**

CAUTION

- **Remove the ignition key before working on the electric system. Otherwise, a short circuit could occur.**
- **Switch off the lights and the parking light before changing a bulb.**

For the sake of the environment

Please ask your specialist retailer how to dispose of used bulbs in the proper manner.

Note

- **Depending on weather conditions (cold or wet), the front lights, the fog lights, the rear lights and the turn signals may be temporarily misted. This has no influence on the useful life of the lighting system. By switching on the lights, the area through which the beam of light is projected will quickly be demisted. However, the edges may continue to be misted.**
- **Please check at regular intervals that all lighting (especially the exterior lighting) on your vehicle is functioning properly. This is not only in the interest of your own safety, but also that of all other road users.**
- **Before changing a bulb, make sure you have the correct new bulb.**
- **Do not touch the glass part of the bulb with your bare hands, use a cloth or paper towel instead. Otherwise, the fingerprints left on the glass will vaporise as a result of the heat generated by the bulb, they will be deposited on the reflector and damage its surface.**

Double headlight bulbs

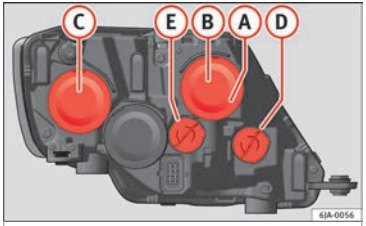


Fig. 88 Main headlight bulbs.

Installation position of double headlight bulbs

(A) Side lights

(B) Main beam headlights

Ⓒ Dipped beam headlights
Ⓓ Turn signal lights
Ⓔ Daylight

Changing side light bulbs

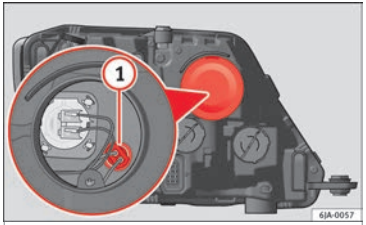


Fig. 89 Changing side light bulbs.

– Raise the bonnet.

– Remove the protective cover ››› **Fig. 89**.

– Remove the bulb holder ››› **Fig. 89** ① by pulling it outwards.

– Remove the bulb by pulling it out and fit the new one.

– Installation involves all of the above steps in reverse sequence.

– Fit the protective cover. Make sure that the cover fits correctly on the housing during operation.

– Check whether the new bulb is working.

Changing main beam headlight bulb

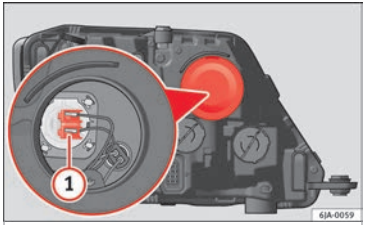


Fig. 90 Changing main beam headlight bulbs.

– Raise the bonnet.

– Remove the protective cover.

– Remove connector ››› **Fig. 90** ① by pulling outward.

– Extract the bulb and fit the replacement so that it fits correctly into the recess on the reflector.

– Installation involves all of the above steps in reverse sequence.

– Fit the protective cover. Make sure that the cover fits correctly on the housing during operation.

– Check whether the new bulb is working.

Changing dipped beam light bulbs

Fig. 91 Changing dipped beam headlight bulbs: wheel housing.

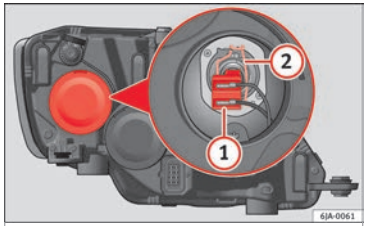


Fig. 92 Changing dipped beam headlight bulbs.

– Turn the wheel for access to the wheel housing cover and remove the cover ››› **Fig. 91**.

– Remove the protective cover from the headlight ››› **Fig. 92**. »

– Remove connector ››› Fig. 92 ① by pulling outward.

– Unclip the retainer spring ››› Fig. 92 ② pressing clockwise and inwards.

– Extract the bulb and fit the replacement so that the lug on the base fits into the recess on the reflector.

– Fit the connector.

– Fit the protective cover. Make sure that the cover fits correctly on the housing during operation.

– Replace the wheel housing cover.

– Check whether the new bulb is working.

Changing turn signal bulbs

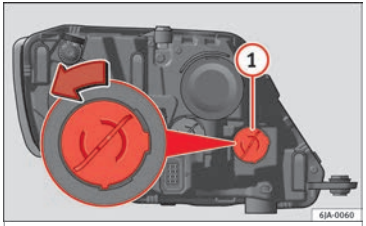


Fig. 93 Changing turn signal bulbs.

– Raise the bonnet.

– Turn the bulb holder ››› Fig. 93 ① anti-clockwise and remove it.

– Remove the bulb by pressing on the bulb holder and turning it anti-clockwise at the same time.

– Fit the replacement bulb in the bulb holder and turn clockwise as far as it will go.

– Check whether the new bulb is working.

Changing daytime driving light bulbs

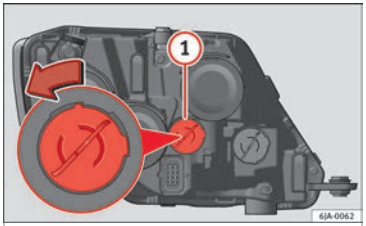


Fig. 94 Changing daytime driving light bulbs.

– Raise the bonnet.

– Turn the bulb holder ››› Fig. 94 ① anti-clockwise and remove it.

– Remove the bulb by pressing on the bulb holder and turning it anti-clockwise at the same time.

– Fit the replacement bulb in the bulb holder and turn clockwise as far as it will go.

– Check whether the new bulb is working.

Changing the fog light bulbs

Front fog light bulb

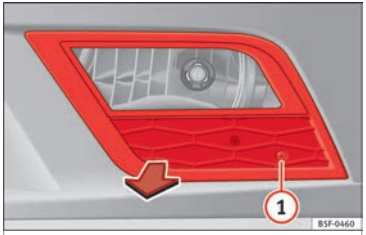


Fig. 95 Front fog light.

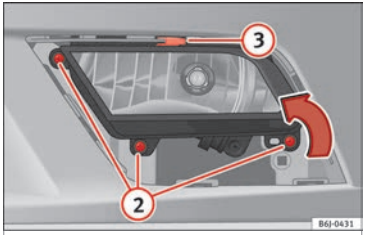


Fig. 96 Front fog light.

– Remove the bolt ››› Fig. 95 ① from the fog light grille with a screwdriver.

– Subsequently, remove the clips located on the edge of the grille with gentle leverage.

– Remove the bolts (3x) ››› Fig. 96 ② to remove the fog light.

– Remove the metal clip situated on the upper part of the fog light by pulling towards the exterior of the vehicle ››› Fig. 96 ③.

Removing the bulb holder

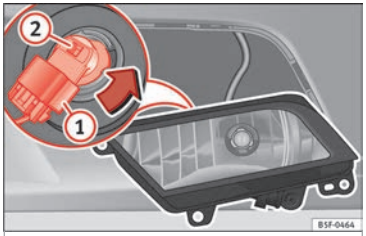


Fig. 97 Front fog light.

– Remove connector ››› Fig. 97 ① from the bulb.

– Turn the bulb holder ››› Fig. 97 ② anti-clockwise and pull.

– Remove the bulb by pressing on the bulb holder and turning it counter-clockwise at the same time.

– Installation involves all of the above steps in reverse sequence.

– Check that the bulb works properly.

Changing the rear lights (on the side panel)

Removing the rear light[1)]

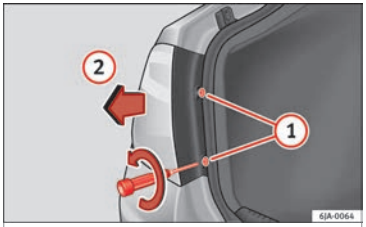


Fig. 98 Remove the rear light unit from side panel.

Check which of the bulbs is defective.

– Open the luggage compartment to access the rainduct area.

– Take the screwdriver or a Torx 20 key (T20) from the vehicle tool kit and loosen (turning anti-clockwise) and remove the two retaining screws that secure the front of the light ››› Fig. 98 ①, taking care not to lose them. »

[1)] In the case of LED rear lights of the side panel only the turn signal lamp can be changed. The illustrations in the manual correspond to the bulb version and do not correspond exactly to the LED version.

– Pull the rear light unit backward (››› Fig. 98 (2)) to remove the light from its housing.

Removing the bulb holder

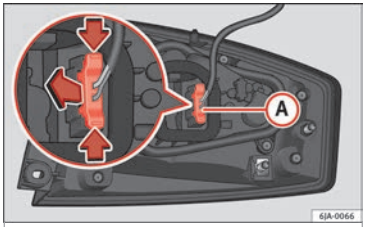


Fig. 99 Light connector at the rear of the rear light unit.

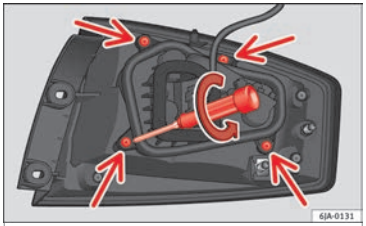


Fig. 100 Retaining screws on reverse side of rear light unit.

– Disconnect the light connector (A) ››› Fig. 99 by moving its side levers (arrows) and pulling the connector outwards.

– Place the light on a level, horizontal surface on top of a soft cloth so as not to scratch the outer glass.

– Unscrew the four retaining screws from the bulb holder anti-clockwise using a screwdriver or a Torx 20 key (T20) from the vehicle tool kit ››› Fig. 100. Take care not to lose the bulb holder retaining screws.

Changing bulbs

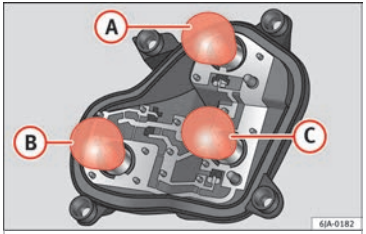


Fig. 101 Position of the bulbs in the bulb holder

The bulbs are secured with a bayonet fastener. The table below gives an overview of the bulb positions.

– Lightly press the defective bulb into the bulb holder, then turn it anti-clockwise and remove it.

– Fit the new bulb, pressing it into the bulb holder and turn it clockwise as far as it will go.

– Use a cloth to remove any fingerprints from the glass part of the bulb.

– Check that the new bulb works properly.

– Replace the bulb holder.

– Screw in the bulb holder using the four screws, turning them clockwise.

Position of the bulbs

››› Fig. 101	Bulb function
(A)	Turn signals: PY21W NA LL
(B)	Side lights-brake lights: P21/5W
(C)	Side lights: P21/5W

Note

Check the condition of the seal. If damaged, a replacement can be acquired from an Official Service.

Fitting the rear light

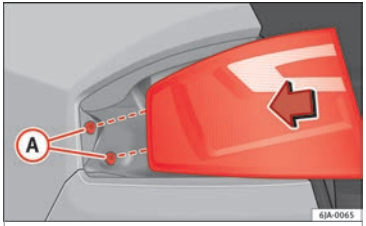


Fig. 102 Fit the tail light unit.

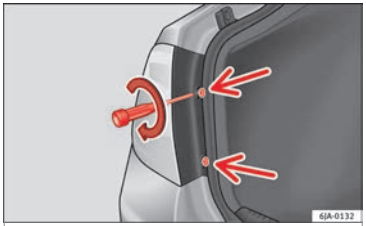


Fig. 103 Fit the tail light unit.

– Make sure the connector is correctly in place.

– Press the rear light unit backwards (driving direction) by fitting the fastenings into the rubber mountings ››› **Fig. 102** (A).

– Take the screwdriver or a Torx 20 key (T20) from the vehicle tool kit and tighten (turning clockwise ››› **Fig. 103**) the two retaining screws that secure the front of the light.

Changing tail lights (on the rear lid)

Removing the bulb holder[1)]

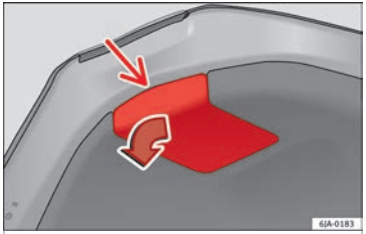


Fig. 104 Remove the cover from the boot lid.

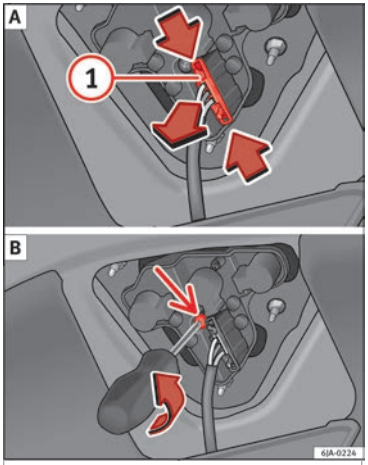


Fig. 105 Remove the bulb holder.

The rear lid must be open to change the bulbs.

You can access the bulb holder for the inner tail lights through the inside of the rear lid.

– Check which of the bulbs is defective. »

[1)] For rear-lid LED rear lights, only the reverse and retro fog bulb can be replaced. The illustrations in the manual correspond to the bulb version and do not correspond exactly to the LED version.

– Open the cover to access the lights, turning it by hand in the direction indicated by the arrows.

– Access the lights by disconnecting the connector (1) ››› Fig. 105 A and unscrewing the bulb holder ››› Fig. 105 B. Take care not to lose the bulb holder retaining screw.

– Change the bulbs ››› page 90.

Changing bulbs

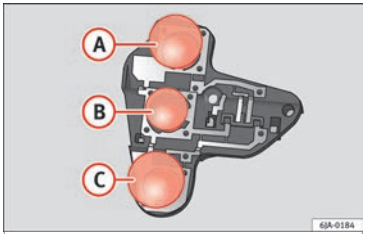


Fig. 106 Position of the bulbs in the bulb holder

The bulbs are secured with a bayonet fastener. The table below gives an overview of the bulbs ››› table on page 90.

– Lightly press the defective bulb into the bulb holder, then turn it anti-clockwise and remove it.

– Fit the new bulb, pressing it into the bulb holder and turn it clockwise as far as it will go.

– Use a cloth to remove any fingerprints from the glass part of the bulb.

– Check that the new bulb works properly.

– Re-install the bulb holder ››› page 90.

– Screw in the bulb holder.

Position of the bulbs

››› Fig. 106	Bulb function
A	Reversing lights: P21W
B	Side lights: R5W LL
C	Fog lights: P21W

Note

One of the two sides may not be fitted with a fog light, depending on the country and type of driving. In this case, the hole for the light is covered.

Fitting the bulb-holder

– Position the bulb holder on the tail light and align it so that it is securely seated.

– Screw in the bulb holder using the corresponding screw.

– Make sure the connector is correctly in place.

– Close the inner trim cover.

Note

Check the condition of the seal. If damaged, a replacement can be acquired from an Official Service.

Changing the bulb on the number plate

Removing the bulb holder

Fig. 107 Removing number plate light

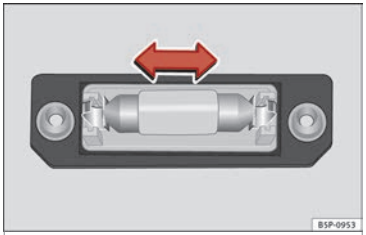


Fig. 108 Changing the bulb.

– Unscrew the screws to remove the bulb ››› **Fig. 107**.

– Remove the bulb, moving it in the direction of the arrow and outwards ››› **Fig. 108**.

– Installation involves all of the above steps in reverse sequence.

Note

Depending on how equipped the vehicle is, the number plate lights may be LEDs. LEDs have an estimated life that exceeds than that of the car. If a light with LEDs fails, go to an authorised workshop for replacement.

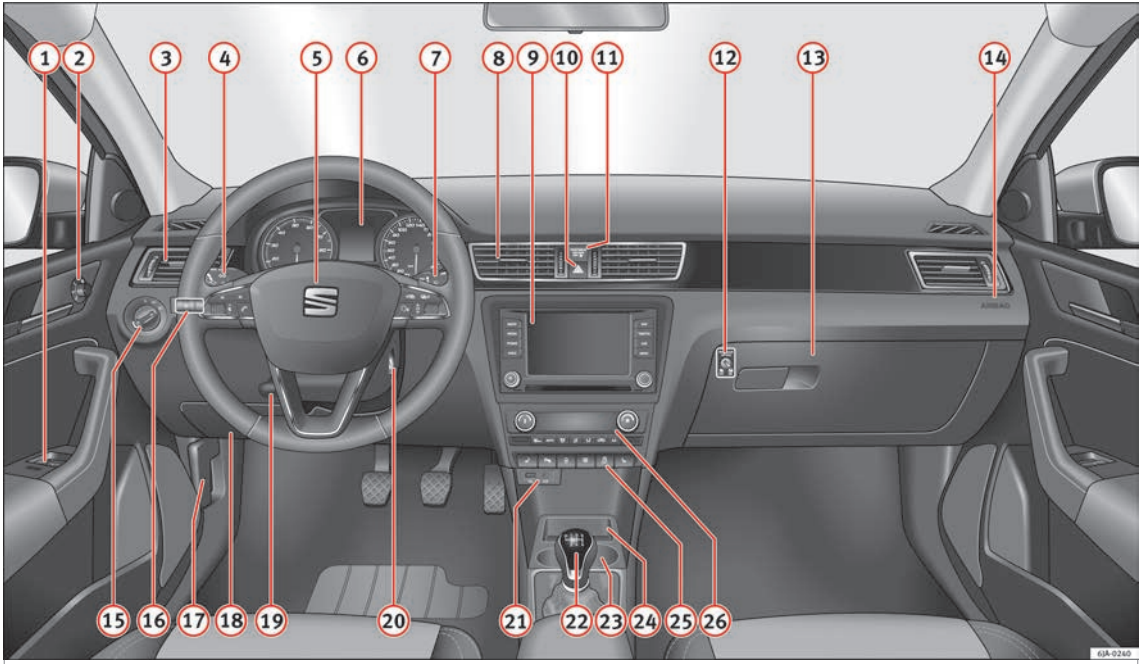


Fig. 109 Interior.

Operation

Controls and displays

General instrument panel

1 Electric window controls 115
2 Control for adjusting electric exterior mirrors 126
3 Air outlets 143
4 Multifunction switch lever:
– Turn signals, headlights, parking lights, headlight flasher 118
– Cruise control system 174
5 Steering wheel:
– With horn
– With the driver front airbag 14
– With controls for audio, navigation system and telephone 100
6 General instrument panel: instruments and warning lamps 93
7 Multifunction switch lever:
– Multifunction display 23
– Windscreen wipers and windscreen washers 125
8 Air outlets 143
9 Depending on the equipment:
– Audio system
– Navigation system
10 Hazard warning lights switch 121
11 Control lamp for front passenger airbag deactivated warning lamp .. 71
12 Front passenger airbag switch 71
13 Depending on the equipment, glove compartment with: 131
– CD player* and/or SD card* ››› Booklet Radio
14 Front passenger airbag 14
15 Light switch 117
16 Headlight range control 117
17 Bonnet release lever 203
18 Fuse compartment 81
19 Steering column adjustment lever 13
20 Ignition lock 151
21 USB/AUX-IN input 104
22 Depending on the equipment:
– Gear lever (manual gearbox) 156
– Selector lever (automatic gearbox) 158
23 Depending on the equipment:
– Drink holder 132
– Ashtray holder 134
24 Rear shelf 131
25 Depending on the equipment, controls for:
– Driver heated seat 128
– Park assist system 167
– Central lock button 109
– Heated rear window 123
– Start-Stop system 181
– Front passenger heated seat 128
26 Depending on the equipment:
– Heating controls 144
– Air conditioning controls 145
– Climatronic controls 147

Note

The location of the controls of right-hand drive cars differs slightly from the location shown here ››› Fig. 109. However, the symbols correspond to the respective controls.

Instruments and warning lamps

Instruments

View of instrument panel

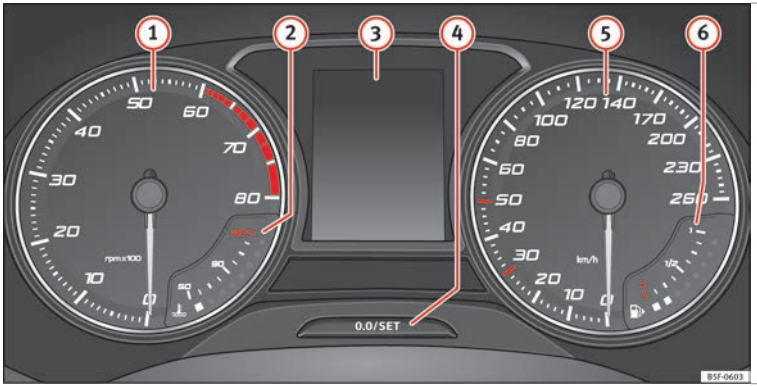


Fig. 110 Instrument panel, on dash panel

Details of the instruments ››› **Fig. 110**:

① **Rev counter** (with the engine running, in hundreds of revolutions per minute).

The beginning of the red zone of the rev counter indicates the maximum speed in any gear after running-in and with the engine hot. However, it is advisable to change up a gear or move the selector lever to **D** (or lift your foot off the accelerator) before the needle reaches the red zone ››› ❗.

② **Engine coolant temperature display** ››› page 205.

③ **Displays on the screen**.

④ **Adjuster button and display** ››› page 97.

⑤ **Speedometer**.

⑥ **Fuel gauge** ››› page 98.

⚠ WARNING

Any distraction may lead to an accident, with the risk of injury.

- **Do not operate the instrument panel controls when driving.**

CAUTION

- **To prevent damage to the engine, the rev counter needle should only remain in the red zone for a short period of time.**
- **When the engine is cold, avoid high revs and heavy acceleration and do not make the engine work hard.**

For the sake of the environment

Changing up a gear in time reduces fuel consumption and noise.

Rev counter

The rev counter indicates the number of engine revolutions per minute ››› Fig. 110 (1).

Together with the gear-change indicator, the rev counter offers you the possibility of using the engine of your vehicle at a suitable speed.

The start of the red zone on the dial indicates the maximum engine speed which may be used briefly when the engine is warm and after it has been run in properly. Before reaching this range, you should change to a higher gear for vehicles with a manual gearbox or for automatic gearboxes put the selector lever in "D" or take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

We recommend that you avoid high revs and that you follow the recommendations on the gear-change indicator. Consult the additional information in ››› page 25.

CAUTION

Never allow the rev counter needle (1) ››› Fig. 110 to go into the red zone on the scale for more than a very brief period, otherwise there is a risk of engine damage.

For the sake of the environment

Changing up a gear early will help you to save fuel and minimise emissions and engine noise.

Indications on the display

A variety of information can be viewed on the instrument panel display ››› Fig. 110 (3) depending on the vehicle equipment:

- Bonnet, rear lid and doors open ››› page 25.
- Information and warning texts.
- Mileage.
- Time.
- Navigation instructions.
- Outside temperature.
- Compass.
- Shift lever position ››› page 158.
- Recommended gear (manual gearbox) ››› page 25.
- Multifunction display (MFD) and menus with different setting options ››› page 23.
- Service interval display ››› page 30.
- Second speed display ››› page 26.
- Speed warning function ››› page 29.
- Start-Stop system status display ››› page 181.
- Low consumption driving status (ECO) ››› page 96
- Identifying letters on engine (MKB).

Distance travelled

The *odometer* registers the total distance travelled by the car.

The *odometer* (**trip**) shows the distance travelled since the last odometer reset. The last digit of the trip recorder indicates distances of 100 metres or one tenths of a mile.

- Briefly press the button ››› Fig. 110 (4) to reset the trip recorder to 0.
- Keep the button (4) pressed for about 3 seconds and the previous value will be displayed.

»

Time

- To set the time, keep the button ››› Fig. 110 (4) pressed for more than 3 seconds to select the hour or minute display.
- To continue setting the time, press the upper or lower part of the button (4). Hold button down to scroll through the numbers quickly.
- Press the button (4) again in order to finish setting the time.

The time can also be set via the CAR key and Setup function button in the Easy Connect system ››› page 99.

Compass

With the ignition on and the navigation system on, the cardinal point corresponding to the direction of travel of the vehicle is displayed on the instrument panel.

Selector lever position

The selected gear is displayed on the side of the selector lever and on the instrument panel display. In positions **D** and **S**, and with the Tiptronic, the corresponding gear is also displayed.

Recommended gear (manual gearbox)

The recommended gear in order to save fuel is displayed on the instrument panel while you are driving ››› page 25.

Second speed display (mph or km/h)

In addition to the speedometer, the speed can also be displayed in a different unit of measurement (in miles or in km per hour).

This option cannot be deactivated in models destined for countries in which the second speed must always be visible.

The second speed display can be adjusted in the Easy Connect system via the CAR key and the Setup function button ››› page 99.

Speed warning

When the speed setting is exceeded, this will be indicated on the instrument panel display. This is very useful, for example when using winter tyres that are not designed for driving at the maximum speed of the vehicle ››› page 29.

The speed warning settings can be adjusted in the Easy Connect system via the CAR key and the Setup function button ››› page 99.

Start-Stop operating display

Updated information relating to the status is displayed on the instrument panel ››› page 181.

Low consumption driving status (ECO)*

Depending on the equipment, when driving, the "**ECO**" display appears on the instrument panel when the vehicle is in low consumption status.

Identifying letters on engine (MKB)

Hold the button ››› Fig. 110 (4) down for more than 15 seconds to display the identifying letters of the vehicle engine (MKB). To do this, the ignition must be switched on and the engine switched off.

⚠ WARNING

Observe the safety warnings ››› ⚠ in Warning and control lamps on page 98.

⚠ WARNING

Even though outside temperatures are above freezing, some roads and bridges may be icy.

- **At outside temperatures above +4°C (+39°F), even when the "ice crystal symbol" is not visible, there may still be patches of ice on the road.**
- **Never rely on the outside temperature indicator!**

Note

- **Different versions of the instrument panel are available and therefore the versions and instructions on the display may vary. In the case of displays without warning or information texts, faults are indicated exclusively by the warning lamps.**

- **Depending on the equipment, some settings and instructions can also be carried out in the Easy Connect system.**
- **When several warnings are active at the same time, the symbols are shown successively for a few seconds and will stay on until the fault is rectified.**

Odometer

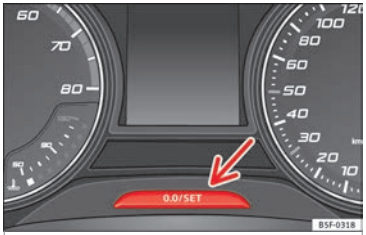


Fig. 111 Instrument panel: odometer and reset button.

The distance covered is displayed in “kilometres” or miles “m”. It is possible to change the measurement units (kilometres “km”/miles “m”) in the radio/Easy Connect*. Please refer to the Easy Connect* Instructions Manual for more details.

Odometer/trip recorder

The odometer shows the total distance covered by the vehicle.

The trip recorder shows the distance that has been travelled since it was last reset. It is used to measure short trips. The last digit of the trip recorder indicates distances of 100 metres or tenths of a mile.

The trip recorder can be set to zero by pressing 0.0/SET ››› **Fig. 111**.

Fault display

If there is a fault in the instrument panel, the letters **DEF** will appear in the trip recorder display. Have the fault repaired immediately, as far as is possible.

Engine coolant temperature display

For vehicles with no coolant temperature gauge, a control lamp appears for high coolant temperatures ››› **page 208**. Please note ››› ❗.

The coolant temperature gauge (2) ››› **Fig. 110** only works when the ignition is switched on. In order to avoid engine damage, please read the following notes for the different temperature ranges.

Engine cold

If only the diodes in the lower part of the scale light up, this indicates that the engine has not yet reached operating temperature. Avoid high revs and heavy acceleration and do not make the engine work hard.

Normal temperature

If in normal operations, the diodes light up until the central zone, it means that the engine has reached operating temperature. At high outside temperatures and when making the engine work hard, the diodes may continue lighting up and reach the upper zone. This is no cause for concern, provided the control lamp does not light up on the instrument panel digital display.

Heat range

When the diodes light up in the upper area of the display and the control lamp appears on the instrument panel display, the coolant temperature is excessive ››› **page 208**.

CAUTION

- **To ensure a long useful life for the engine, avoid high revs, driving at high speed and making the engine work hard for approximately the first 15 minutes when the engine is cold. The phase until the engine is warm also depends on the outside temperature. If necessary, use the engine oil temperature* ››› page 205 as a guide.**

Technical data
Advice
Operation
Emergencies
Safety

- **Additional lights and other accessories in front of the air inlet reduce the cooling effect of the coolant. At high outside temperatures and high engine loads, there is a risk of the engine overheating.**
- **The front spoiler also ensures proper distribution of the cooling air when the vehicle is moving. If the spoiler is damaged this can reduce the cooling effect, which could cause the engine to overheat. Seek specialist assistance.**

Fuel level gauge

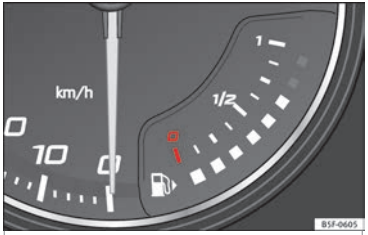


Fig. 112 Fuel gauge.

The fuel gauge ››› **Fig. 112** operates only when the ignition is switched on.

The fuel tank has a capacity of approx. 55 litres. When the needle reaches the fuel reserve area there are only approximately 7 litres left in the tank. In the general instrument panel a warning signal lights up ⛽ and an audible signal sounds.

The informative display indicates:

`Refuel! Fuel range…km...(miles)`

CAUTION

Never completely empty the tank! An irregularity in the fuel supply system can cause irregularities when the engine is running. Unburned fuel can reach the exhaust gas system, which can cause deterioration of the catalytic converter.

Note

- **Some vehicles come fitted with the fuel gauge on the general instrument panel.**
- **The message on the display switches off only after refuelling and carrying out a short journey.**

Control lamps

Warning and control lamps

Read the additional information carefully ››› **page 32**.

The control and warning lamps are indicators of warnings, ››› ⚠, faults ››› ❗ or certain functions. Some control and warning lamps come on when the ignition is switched on, and switch off when the engine starts running, or while driving.

Depending on the model, additional text messages may be viewed on the instrument panel display. These may be purely informative or they may be advising of the need for action ››› **page 94**.

Depending upon the equipment fitted in the vehicle, instead of a warning lamp, sometimes a symbol may be displayed on the instrument panel.

When certain control and warning lamps are lit, an audible warning is also heard.

WARNING

If the warning lamps and messages are ignored, the vehicle may stall in traffic, or may cause accidents and severe injuries.

- **Never ignore the warning lamps or text messages.**
- **Stop the vehicle safely as soon as possible.**
- **Park the vehicle away from traffic and ensure that there are no highly flammable materials under the vehicle that could come into contact with the exhaust system (e.g. dry grass, fuel).**
- **A faulty vehicle represents a risk of accident for the driver and for other road users. If necessary, switch on the hazard warning lamps and put out the warning triangle to advise other drivers.**

- **Before opening the bonnet, switch off the engine and allow it to cool.**
- **In any vehicle, the engine compartment is a hazardous area and could cause severe injuries** **»» page 202****.**

CAUTION

Failure to heed the control lamps and text messages when they appear may result in faults in the vehicle.

Introduction to the Easy Connect system*

System settings (CAR)*

CAR menu (Setup)

Read the additional information carefully **»» page 21**

To select the settings menus, press the Easy Connect CAR button and the Setup function button.

The actual number of menus available and the name of the various options in these menus will depend on the vehicle's electronics and equipment.

Pressing the menu button will always take you to the last menu used.

When the function button check box is activated ☑, the function is active.

Pressing the menu button ⮌ will always take you to the last menu used.

Any changes made using the settings menus are automatically saved on closing those menus.

Function buttons in the vehicle settings menu	Page
ESC system	»» page 154
Tyres	»» page 219
Driver assistance	»» table on page 21
Parking and manoeuvring	»» page 167
Vehicle lights	»» table on page 21
Mirrors and windscreen wipers	»» table on page 21
Opening and closing	»» table on page 21
Multifunction display	»» table on page 21
Date and time	»» table on page 21
Units	»» table on page 21
Service	»» page 30
Factory settings	»» table on page 21

WARNING

Any distraction may lead to an accident, with the risk of injury. Operating the Easy Connect system while driving could distract you from traffic.

Communications and multimedia

Steering wheel controls*

General information

The steering wheel includes a multifunction module from where it is possible to control the audio, telephone and radio/navigation functions without needing to distract the driver.

There are two versions of the multifunction module:

- **Audio system + telephone without voice control version (MID)**: for controlling the audio functions available (radio, audio CD, MP3, iPod®[1], USB[1], SD[1]) and Bluetooth system from the steering wheel.
- **Audio system + telephone with voice control version (HIGH)**: for controlling the audio functions available (radio, audio CD, MP3, iPod®[1], USB[1], SD[1]) and Bluetooth system from the steering wheel.

[1] Depending on the vehicle equipment.

Operating the telephone and audio system without voice control (MID)

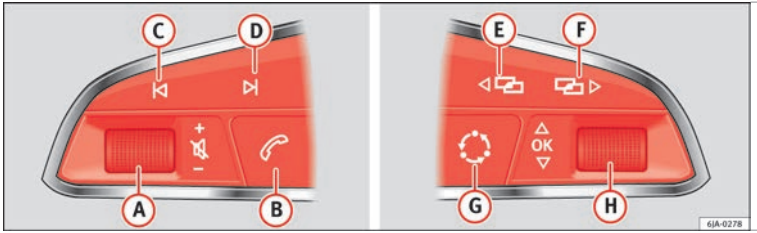


Fig. 113 Controls on the steering wheel.

Button	Radio	Media (except AUX)	AUX	Telephone	Navigation
A	*Turn:* Turn volume up/down *Press:* Mute	*Turn:* Turn volume up/down *Press:* Mute	*Turn:* Turn volume up/down *Press:* Mute	*Turn:* Turn volume up/down *Press:* Mute	*Turn:* Turn volume up/down *Press:* Mute
B	*Short press:* access to the telephone menu in the instrument panel[a].	*Short press:* access to the telephone menu in the instrument panel[a].	*Short press:* access to the telephone menu in the instrument panel[a].	*Short press:* answer/hang up calls, enable/open the telephone menu. *Hold down:* reject an incoming call/switch to private mode/redial[a].	*Short press:* access to the telephone menu in the instrument panel[a].
C	Search for last station	*Short press:* switch to the previous song *Hold down:* quick rewind	No function	No function	No function
D	Search for the next station	*Short press:* switch to the next song *Hold down:* fast forward	No function	No function	No function
E, F	Change menu on instrument panel[a]	Change menu on instrument panel[a]	Change menu on instrument panel[a]	Change menu on instrument panel[a]	Change menu on instrument panel[a]
G	MID: change source	MID: change source	MID: change source	MID: change source	MID: change source

»

Button	Radio	Media (except AUX)	AUX	Telephone	Navigation
H	*Turn:* Next/previous preset[b)] *Press:* Acts on the MFD	*Turn:* Next/previous song[b)] *Press:* Acts on the MFD	*Turn:* No function *Press:* Acts on the MFD	*Turn:* Acts on the MFD *Press:* Confirm	*Turn:* Changes menu or memory on instrument panel *Press:* Operates on instrument panel

a) According to the vehicle's equipment package.

b) Only if the dash panel is in audio menu.

Operating the telephone and audio system with voice control (HIGH)

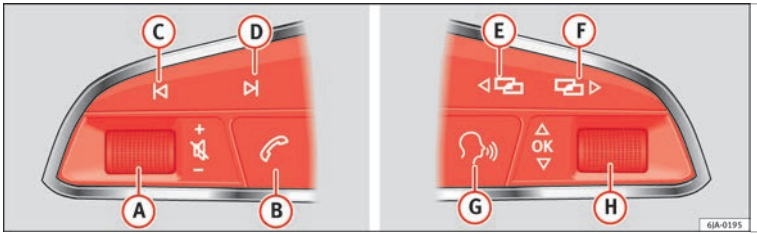


Fig. 114 Controls on the steering wheel.

Button	Radio	Media (except AUX)	AUX	Telephone[a)]	Navigation[a)]
A	*Turn:* Turn volume up/down *Press:* Mute	*Turn:* Turn volume up/down *Press:* Mute	*Turn:* Turn volume up/down *Press:* Mute	*Turn:* Turn volume up/down *Press:* Mute	*Turn:* Turn volume up/down *Press:* Mute
B	*Short press:* access to the telephone menu on the dash panel[a)]. *Hold down:* redial[a)]	*Short press:* access to the telephone menu on the dash panel[a)]. *Hold down:* redial[a)]	*Short press:* access to the telephone menu on the dash panel[a)]. *Hold down:* redial[a)]	*Short press:* answer/hang up calls, enable/open the telephone menu. *Hold down:* reject an incoming call/switch to private/redial mode	*Short press:* access to the telephone menu on the dash panel[a)]. *Hold down:* redial[a)]

Button	Radio	Media (except AUX)	AUX	Telephone[a)]	Navigation[a)]
C	Search for last station	*Short press:* switch to the previous song *Hold down:* quick rewind	No function	No function[b)]	Radio/media functionality (except AUX)
D	Search for the next station	*Short press:* switch to the next song *Hold down:* fast forward	No function	No function[b)]	Radio/media functionality (except AUX)
E, F	Change menu on instrument panel	Change menu on instrument panel	Change menu on instrument panel	Change menu on instrument panel	Change menu on instrument panel
G	Enable/disable voice control[a)]	Enable/disable voice control[a)]	Enable/disable voice control[a)]	No function[b)]	Enable/disable voice control
H	*Turn:* Next/previous preset[c)] *Press:* Acts on the MFD or confirms the menu option of the dash panel depending on the menu option	*Turn:* Next/previous song[c)] *Press:* Acts on the MFD or confirms the menu option of the dash panel depending on the menu option	*Turn:* Acts upon the dash panel menu depending on where it is located *Press:* Acts on the MFD or confirms the menu option of the dash panel depending on the menu option	*Turn:* Acts upon the dash panel menu depending on where it is located *Press:* Acts on the MFD or confirms the menu option of the dash panel depending on the menu option	*Turn:* Acts upon the dash panel menu depending on where it is located *Press:* Acts on the MFD or confirms the menu option of the dash panel depending on the menu option

a) According to the vehicle's equipment package.

b) When a call is being made, radio/media functionality (except AUX).

c) Only if the dash panel is in audio menu.

Multimedia

USB/AUX-IN input

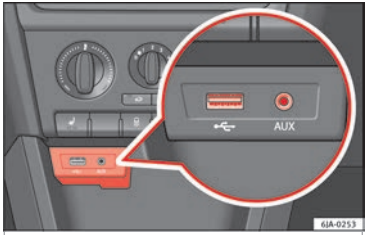


Fig. 115 USB/AUX-IN input.

Depending on the features and the country, the vehicle may have a USB/AUX-IN connection.

The USB/AUX-IN input is located above the storage compartment in the front centre console ››› **Fig. 115**.

The operating description is located in the respective Instruction Manuals of the audio system or the navigation system.

Opening and closing

Remote control

General notes

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 9

The remote control key can

- Lock and unlock the vehicle
- Unlock or open the rear lid

The remote control transmitter and the batteries are integrated in the key. The receiver is inside the vehicle. The remote control key has a maximum range of 30 metres. The range is reduced as the batteries start to lose power.

The key includes a foldaway part that can be used to manually lock or unlock the vehicle and to start the engine.

If a lost key is replaced or the receiver is repaired or changed, the remote control key must be adapted by an authorised SEAT dealer. Only then can the remote control key be used again.

Note

- **The remote control is automatically deactivated when the ignition is switched on.**
- **The remote control function may be temporarily limited by interference from other transmitters near the vehicle that operate on the same frequency (e.g. mobile phone, television transmitter).**
- **If the central locking system or the anti-theft alarm only responds to the remote control at a distance of less than 3 metres, then the battery must be replaced ››› page 106.**
- **If the driver door is open, the vehicle cannot be locked using the remote control.**

Unlocking and locking the vehicle

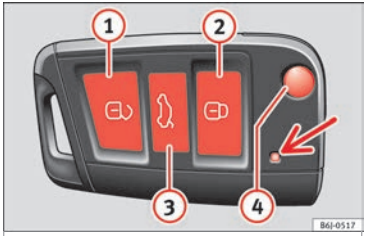


Fig. 116 Remote control key

Unlocking the vehicle

– Press button (1).

Locking the vehicle

– Press button (2).

Deactivating the Safe lock

– Press button (2) twice in 2 seconds. Further information ››› page 107.

Unlocking the rear lid

– Press button (3). Further information ››› page 114.

Unfolding the key shaft

– Press button (4).

Folding the key shaft

– Press button (4) and fold the key shaft back to its original position.

The turn signals will flash twice when the vehicle is unlocked. If the vehicle is unlocked using button (1) and none of the doors or the rear lid is opened in the following 30 seconds, the vehicle will automatically relock and the Safe lock or the anti-theft alarm will be activated. This function prevents the vehicle from being unlocked by mistake.

Locking indication

The turn signals will flash if the vehicle has been correctly locked.

Should any of the doors or the rear lid remain open when the vehicle is locked, the turn signals will only flash when they are closed.

⚠ WARNING

Do not leave people or animals in vehicles locked from outside with the Safe lock activated: the doors and windows cannot then be opened from the inside. Doors locked in this manner could delay assistance in an emergency. Risk of death!

Note

- **Only use the remote control when the doors and the rear lid are locked and the vehicle is within sight.**
- **Do not press the lock button on the remote control before inserting the key in the ignition, otherwise the vehicle could be locked by mistake. Should this occur, press the unlock button on the remote control.**

Remote control synchronisation

f the vehicle cannot be locked or unlocked using the remote control, the key code may not match that of the control unit. This can occur when the remote control buttons are frequently pressed outside the range of the system or if the remote control battery has been replaced.

In this case, it must be synchronised as follows:

- Press any key on the remote control key.
- Open the door using the key within the next minute.

Keys

General notes

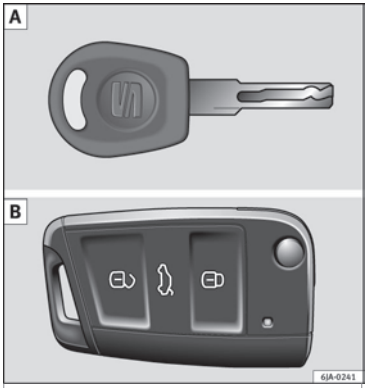


Fig. 117 Key with remote control/Key without remote control.

Two keys are always supplied with the vehicle. Depending on the model version, your car may include keys without remote control ››› Fig. 117 A or with remote control ››› Fig. 117 B.

»

⚠ WARNING

- **Never leave the key inside whenever you leave the vehicle - even if only for a moment. This is particularly important if children are to remain in the vehicle. Children might start the engine or some other electrical component, e.g. electric windows. Risk of injury!**
- **Wait until the vehicle has completely stopped before taking the key out of the ignition. Otherwise the steering wheel may lock suddenly. Risk of accident!**

CAUTION

- **Each key contains electronic components and must, therefore, be protected from dampness and strong vibrations.**
- **Keep the grooves in the key shaft clean. Any dirt (fibre from clothing, dust, etc.) has a negative impact on locks, ignition, etc.**

Note

Should a key be lost, request a duplicate key from an Authorised SEAT dealer.

Replacing the battery in the remote control key

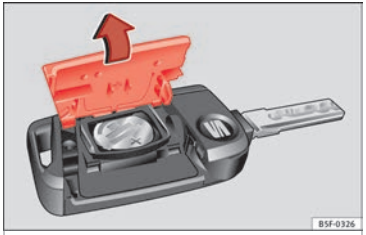


Fig. 118 Vehicle key: opening the battery compartment

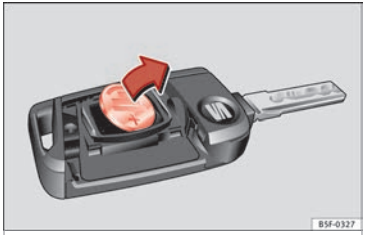


Fig. 119 Vehicle key: removing the battery

SEAT recommends you ask a specialised workshop to replace the battery.

The battery is located to the rear of the vehicle key, under a cover.

Changing the battery

- Unfold the vehicle key shaft.
- Remove the cover from the back of the vehicle key ››› **Fig. 118** in the direction of the arrow ››› ❗.
- Extract the battery from the compartment using a suitable thin object ››› **Fig. 119**.
- Place the new battery in the compartment as shown ››› **Fig. 119**, pressing in the opposite direction to that shown by the arrow ››› ❗.
- Fit the cover as shown ››› **Fig. 118**, pressing it onto the vehicle key casing in the opposite direction to that shown by the arrow until it clicks into place.

CAUTION

- **If the battery is not changed correctly, the vehicle key may be damaged.**
- **Use of unsuitable batteries may damage the vehicle key. For this reason, always replace the dead battery with another of the same voltage, size and specifications.**
- **When fitting the battery, check that the polarity is correct.**

For the sake of the environment

Please dispose of your used batteries correctly and with respect for the environment.

Note

If it is not possible to unlock or lock the vehicle with the remote control key once the battery has been replaced, it will need to be re-synchronised **»» page 105****.**

Central locking system

General notes

All of the doors, the boot lid and the fuel cap flap will[1] unlock at the same time when the central locking system is used.

Warning lamp on the driver door

Once the doors are locked, the warning lamp will flash quickly for 2 seconds and then at a slower rate.

If the vehicle is locked with Safe lock engaged **»» page 108**, the warning lamp on the driver door will flash quickly for 2 seconds before switching off for 30 seconds and then flashing at a slower rate.

If the warning lamp flashes quickly for 2 seconds and then remains switched on before flashing at a slower rate after 30 seconds, there is a fault in the interior monitor and tow-away protection system **»» page 113**. Go to a technical service.

Individualised settings

Unlocking single doors

This optional function unlocks the driver door only. The other doors remain locked and are only unlocked when the next command is given (unlock).

Automatic unlock and lock

The doors and the rear lid are locked automatically when the vehicle reaches a speed of about 15 km/h (9 mph).

The doors unlock automatically when the key is removed from the ignition. Additionally, the driver or front passenger can unlock the doors by pressing the **»» page 109** central lock button or by pulling the front door handle.

WARNING

Locking the doors prevents intruders from getting into the car, e.g. while waiting at intersections. However, it can also delay assistance in the event of an accident. Risk of death!

Note

- **Activation of the single door setting can be requested at your SEAT dealer.**
- **In the event of an accident in which the airbags deploy, the doors will be automatically unlocked for easier access and assistance.**
- **If the central locking system should fail to work at any time, only the driver door can be locked or unlocked using the key** **»» page 108****. All other doors and the boot hatch can be operated manually.**
  - **Manual release** **»» page 10****.**
  - **Manual release of the rear lid** **»» page 10****.**

[1] Valid for vehicles with a keyless fuel tank cap.

Unlocking with key

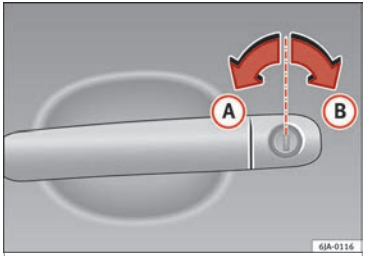


Fig. 120 Key positions during vehicle locking and unlocking.

– Turn the key in the driver door in the forward driving direction to its unlock position (A) ››› **Fig. 120**.

– Pull the handle and open the door.

- All doors (driver door only on vehicles with anti-theft alarm) are unlocked.
- The rear lid is unlocked.
- The fuel tank flap is unlocked[1].
- The courtesy lights switch on.
- The Safe lock is deactivated.
- The driver door warning lamp stops flashing (on vehicles not equipped with an anti-theft system) ››› **page 112**.

[1] Valid for vehicles with a keyless fuel tank cap.

Note

If the vehicle is equipped with an anti-theft alarm system, you have 15 seconds from the time the door is opened to insert the key in the ignition and start the vehicle. If, during these 15 seconds, the vehicle is not started, the alarm is triggered.

Lock with key

– Turn the key in the driver door lock cylinder in the reverse direction to its lock position (B) ››› **Fig. 120**.

- The doors, the boot lid and the fuel tank flap[1] will be locked.
- The courtesy lights switch off.
- The Safe lock is immediately activated.
- Warning lamp on the driver door starts to flash.

Note

The vehicle doors cannot be locked if the driver door is open.

Safe Lock

The central locking system is equipped with a **Safe lock**. If the vehicle is closed from outside, the door locks will automatically lock. The warning lamp on the driver door will flash quickly for about 2 seconds and then at a slower rate. It is not possible to open any of the doors from the inside or outside using the handle. This limits the possibility of intruders getting into the vehicle.

The Safe lock can be deactivated by pressing the lock button twice in less than 2 seconds.

If Safe lock is out of service, the control lamp on the driver door will flash quickly for about 2 seconds before switching off for 30 seconds and then flashing at a slower rate.

The Safe lock is re-activated on unlocking and locking the vehicle again.

If the vehicle is locked and the Safe lock is deactivated, the vehicle can be opened from inside by pulling on the door handle.

WARNING

Do not leave people or animals in locked vehicles with Safe lock activated: the doors and windows cannot then be opened from the inside. Doors locked in this manner could delay assistance in an emergency. Risk of death!

Note

- **The anti-theft alarm switches on automatically when the vehicle is locked, even if the Safe lock is deactivated. The Vehicle interior monitoring, however, is not activated.**
- **Given that the Safe function will be activated on locking the vehicle, CHECK DEADLOCK will be shown on the general instrument panel display. On vehicles equipped with an informative display, `Caution SAFE! On-board documentation!`**

Central locking button

Fig. 121 Central lock button.

If the vehicle has not been locked from outside, it is possible to lock and unlock the doors from inside by pressing the ›› **Fig. 121** button, even without the key in the ignition.

Locking of all doors, the boot lid and the fuel tank flap[1)]

– Press the button ›› **Fig. 121**. The warning lamp on the button will light up.

Unlocking of all doors, the boot lid and the fuel tank cap[1)]

– Press the button ›› **Fig. 121**. The warning lamp on the button will switch off.

If the vehicle has been locked using the central lock button.

- The rear boot lid cannot be unlocked from the outside (security measure, e.g. when stopped at an intersection).
- The doors can be unlocked individually by pulling the handle.
- The vehicle doors cannot be locked if any of the doors are open.
- In the event of an accident in which the airbags activate, doors locked from the inside will be automatically unlocked for easier access and assistance.

WARNING

The central locking system remains operative when the ignition is switched off. Never leave children unattended in the vehicle, as doors locked from the inside delay assistance in an emergency. Risk of sustaining fatal injuries!

Note

The handles and the central lock buttons will not work if the Safe lock ›› **page 108** **is activated.**

[1)] Valid for vehicles with a keyless fuel tank cap.

Unlocking and locking the vehicle with Keyless Access

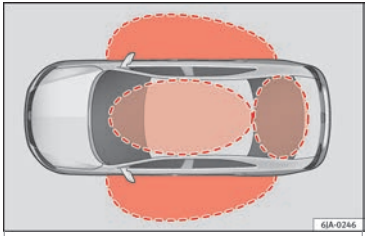


Fig. 122 Keyless Access locking and ignition system: in the proximity of the car.

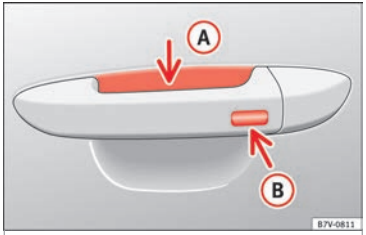


Fig. 123 Keyless Access locking and ignition system: sensor surface (A) for unlocking inside the door handle and sensor surface (B) for locking on the exterior of the handle.

Keyless Access is a key-free locking and ignition system to unlock and lock the vehicle without actively using its key. For this, only a valid vehicle key is required to be in an area near ››› **Fig. 122** the vehicle and one of the sensor surfaces to be touched on the door handles ››› **Fig. 123**.

General information

If a valid key is located in the proximity of the car ››› **Fig. 122**, the Keyless Access lock and ignition system gives the key entry as soon as one of the sensor surfaces on the door handles is touched or the push button on the boot hatch is operated. The following features are then available without having to use the vehicle key actively:

- Keyless-Entry: unlocking of the vehicle with the handles on the four doors or the button located on the boot hatch.
- Keyless-Go: engine ignition and driving. For this to occur, there has to be a valid key inside the vehicle and the ››› **page 151**.
- Keyless-Exit: unlocking of the vehicle with one of the four door handle.

The central locking and locking systems operate in the same way as a *normal* locking and unlocking system. Only the controls change.

Unlocking the vehicle is confirmed with a *double* flash of the indicator lights; locking by a *single* flash.

The vehicle will lock again after a few seconds if you unlock the vehicle but fail to open any door or boot hatch.

Unlocking and opening the doors (Keyless-Entry)

- Grip the door handle. In doing this, the sensor surface ››› **Fig. 123** (A) (arrow) is touched on the handle and the vehicle unlocks.
- Open the door.

On vehicles without a "safe" security system: shutting and locking doors (Keyless-Exit)

- Switch the ignition off.
- Close the driver's door.
- Touch the surface sensor (B) *once* (arrow) on the door handle. The door being operated must be closed.

On vehicles with a "safe" security system: shutting and locking doors (Keyless-Exit)

- Switch the ignition off.
- Close the driver's door.
- Touch the surface sensor (B) *once* (arrow) on the door handle. The vehicle locks with the "safe" security system ››› **page 108**. The door being operated must be closed.
- Touch the sensor surface (B) *twice* (arrow) on the door handle to lock the vehicle without the "safe" security system ››› **page 108**.

Unlocking and locking the boot hatch

When the vehicle is locked, the hatch automatically unlocks on opening if ››› Fig. 122 there is a valid vehicle key in the proximity.

Open or close the hatch *normally* ››› page 113.

After closing, the hatch locks automatically. In the following instances, the rear lid does **not** lock automatically after closing:

- If the entire vehicle is unlocked.
- If the key used last is inside the vehicle. All vehicle indicator lights flash *four times*. The vehicle will lock again after a few seconds if no door or boot hatch are opened.

Locking the vehicle with a second key

If there is a vehicle key inside the vehicle and it is locked from the outside with a second vehicle key, the key inside the vehicle is blocked for engine ignition ››› page 149. In order to enable engine ignition, the button on the key inside the vehicle needs to be pressed ››› page 104.

Automatically disabling sensors

If the vehicle is not locked or unlocked for a long period of time, the proximity sensor on the passenger door is automatically disabled.

If the exterior sensor on the door handle is often activated unusually with the vehicle locked (e.g. by the branches of a bush rubbing against it), all proximity sensors are disabled for a time. If this only happens with the exterior sensor on the driver's door, only this sensor is disabled.

Sensors will again be enabled:

- After a time.
- **OR:** if the vehicle is unlocked with the button on the key.
- **OR:** if the boot is opened.

Convenience functions

To **close** all electric windows, the sun roof and electric tilting panoramic roof with the convenience feature, keep your finger for a few seconds on the lock sensor surface ››› Fig. 123 (B) located on the exterior part of the driver or passenger door handle until the windows and roof close.

Opening the doors by touching the sensor surface on the handle takes place in accordance with the settings activated on the menu `Configuration - Convenience`.

CAUTION

The sensor surfaces on the door handles could engage if hit with a water jet or high pressure steam if there is a valid vehicle key in the nearby area. If at least one of the windows is open and the sensor surface (B) on one of the handle permanently activates, all windows will close. If the water jet or steam is briefly moved away from the sensor surface (A) on one of the handles and then pointed at it again, all the windows will probably open ››› page 111, Convenience functions.

Note

- **If the vehicle battery has little or no charge, or the vehicle key battery is almost or entirely out of charge, it is likely that the vehicle will not be able to be lock or unlocked with the Keyless Access system. The vehicle can be unlocked or locked manually ››› page 9.**
- **If there is no valid key inside the vehicle or the system fails to detect one, a warning will display on the dash panel screen. This could happen if any other radio frequency signal interferes with the key signal (e.g. from a mobile device accessory) or if the key is covered by another object (e.g. an aluminium case).**
- **If the sensors are very dirty, e.g. have a layer of salt, how the sensors on the door handles operate may be affected. If this is the case, wash the vehicle ››› page 193.**
- **If the vehicle is equipped with an automatic gearbox, it may only be locked in the gear stick is in position P.**

Child-proof locking

Fig. 124 Activating the childproof lock.

The childproof lock prevents the rear doors from being opened from the inside. Doors can only be opened from the outside.

The childproof lock is activated and deactivated using the ignition key.

Activating the childproof lock

– Turn the slot in the direction of the arrow ››› **Fig. 124** (in the other direction on the right-hand door).

Deactivating the childproof lock

– Turn the slot in the opposite direction of the arrow (in the other direction on the right-hand door).

Anti-theft alarm system*

General notes

The anti-theft alarm system increases vehicle protection from intruders. The system will initiate acoustic and optical warning signals when your vehicle is tried to be forced.

Activating the alarm system

The anti-theft alarm switches on automatically when the vehicle is locked using the remote control key or inserting the key in the driver door. The alarm is activated around 30 seconds after the vehicle is locked.

Deactivating the alarm system

The anti-theft alarm system is deactivated when the remote control unlock button is pressed. If the vehicle is not opened within 30 seconds after emitting the radio frequency signal, the system will be reactivated.

If the vehicle is unlocked using by inserting the key in the driver door, the ignition must be switched on within 15 seconds. This deactivates the alarm system. If, during these 15 seconds, **the vehicle is not started**, **the alarm is triggered**.

When does the system trigger an alarm?

The following areas of the vehicle are monitored:

- Bonnet
- Rear lid
- Doors
- Ignition
- Tilt angle ››› **page 113, Vehicle interior monitoring and anti-tow system**
- The interior ››› **page 113, Vehicle interior monitoring and anti-tow system**
- Drop in voltage in the car systems
- The factory-fitted towing bracket

The alarm is triggered immediately if one of the battery cables is disconnected while the alarm system is active.

How to turn OFF the alarm

To deactivate the alarm, press the unlock button on the remote control key or switch on the ignition.

Note

- **The alarm horn power supply has a 5-year useful life. Contact an Official Service for more detailed information.**
- **To make sure that the anti-theft alarm is fully operative when leaving the vehicle, check that all the doors and windows are closed.**

- **Remote control and receiver unit coding means that the remote control cannot be used on other vehicles.**

Vehicle interior monitoring and anti-tow system

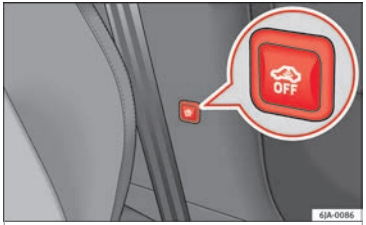


Fig. 125 Button for vehicle interior monitoring and the tow-away protection system.

The Vehicle interior monitoring system is activated if movements are detected in the interior of the vehicle.

Deactivating Vehicle interior monitoring and the tow-away protection system

– Switch the ignition off.

– Open the driver door.

– Press the ⊗ ››› **Fig. 125** button on the centre column. The red backlit symbol ⊗ on the button turns orange.

– Lock the vehicle within the next 30 seconds.

The Vehicle interior monitoring system and the tow-away protection system are reactivated when the vehicle is unlocked again.

Note

- **The vehicle interior monitoring system and the tow-away protection system must be deactivated if there is a danger of the alarm being triggered due to movements by children or animals in the interior when being transported (e.g. by boat or by train) or towed.**
- **The effectiveness of the Vehicle interior monitoring system is reduced if the spectacle case is left open. Always close the storage compartment before locking the vehicle to ensure that this monitoring system operates correctly.**

Rear lid

Tailgate automatic lock

Where the vehicle has been locked by pressing the button on the remote control with the boot lid open, the boot lid will lock automatically when closed.

The automatic rear lid locking time extension function can be activated. When this function is activated and once the boot lid has been unlocked by pressing the button on the remote control key (2) ››› **page 104**, the boot lid can be re-opened for a certain length of time.

Where required, the automatic boot lid locking time extension function can be activated or deactivated at a SEAT Authorised Service, which will provide all of the necessary information.

Before the vehicle locks automatically, there is a risk of intruders getting into the vehicle. Therefore, we recommend you always lock the vehicle by pressing the button on the remote control or by using the key without remote control ››› **page 108**.

Rear lid

Fig. 126 Rear lid: opening from the outside.

Fig. 127 Close-up of the inside trim of the rear lid: hand grip

Read the additional information carefully
››› page 10

The rear lid opening system operates electrically. It is activated by using the handle on the boot lid.

This system may or may not be operative, depending on the situation of the vehicle.

If the rear lid is locked then it cannot be opened, however if it is unlocked then the opening system is operative and the rear lid may be opened.

To change the locking / unlocking status, press the button or the button (1) ››› **Fig. 116** on the remote control key.

A warning appears on the instrument panel display if the boot lid is open or not properly closed.* An audible warning is also given if the boot lid is opened while the vehicle is moving faster than 6 km/h (4 mph)*.

⚠ WARNING

- **Always close the rear lid properly. Risk of accident or injury.**
- **Do not close the rear lid by pushing it down with your hand on the rear window. The glass could smash. Risk of injury!**
- **Ensure the rear lid is locked after closing it. If not, it may open unexpectedly while driving.**
- **Never allow children to play in or around the vehicle. A locked vehicle can be subjected to extremely high and low temperatures, depending on the time of year, thus causing serious injuries/illness. It could even have fatal consequences. Close and lock both the rear lid and all the other doors when you are not using the vehicle.**
- **Closing the rear lid without observing and ensuring it is clear could cause serious injury to you and to third parties. Make sure that no one is in the path of the rear lid.**
- **Never drive with the rear lid open or half-closed, exhaust gases may penetrate into the interior of the vehicle. Danger of poisoning!**
- **If you only open the rear lid, do not leave the key inside. The vehicle will not be opened if the key is left inside.**

Note

- **Once the rear lid is closed, its lock is engaged and the alarm system is activated. Only valid if the vehicle has been locked before the rear lid is closed.**
- **The release catch located at the top of the registration plate recess is deactivated on accelerating or at speeds of over 5 km/h (3 mph). The catch is reactivated when the vehicle comes to a standstill and a door is opened.**

Opening and closing of electric windows

Operation of the electric windows

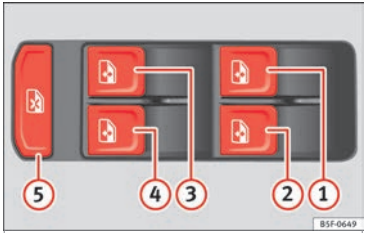


Fig. 128 Detail of the driver door: controls for the windows.

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 11

The electric window opening and closing system only works when the ignition is switched on.

Opening

– Press gently on the respective button on the door to open the window. The process will stop when the button is released.

– The driver door window can also be automatically opened by pressing the button as far as it will go (fully open). Press the button again to immediately stop it.

Closing

– Press the respective button gently to close the window. The process will stop when the button is released.

Safety button

Press the safety button (5) ››› Fig. 128 to deactivate the controls on the rear doors. Pressing the safety button (5) again will reactivate the controls on the rear doors.

If the rear door controls are deactivated, the warning lamp on the safety button (5) will light up.

WARNING

- **When locking the vehicle from the outside, make sure that nobody is inside the vehicle, as the windows cannot be opened from the inside in an emergency.**
- **For safety reasons, use safety button (5) ››› Fig. 128 that deactivates the window switches on the rear doors when children are travelling in the rear seats.**

CAUTION

- **Keep the windows clean to ensure the system operates correctly.**
- **Defrost** **››› page 196, Windows and mirrors** **any frozen windows before use. Otherwise you run the risk of damaging the electric window riser mechanism.**
- **Always make sure all of the windows are closed on leaving the locked vehicle.**

Note

- **The vehicle heating and ventilation system should be used to ventilate the interior while driving. Leaving the windows open could allow dust and other dirt to enter the vehicle and cause unpleasant noises at certain speeds.**
- **Do not leave the side windows open at high speeds, as this will overly increase fuel consumption.**

Note

The electric window opening mechanism is equipped with a thermostat switch. This may overheat if the window is opened and closed repeatedly. This causes the window to lock temporarily. Once the thermostat switch has cooled down, the window can be operated once again.

Roll-back function on the electric windows

The electric windows are equipped with a roll-back system that reduces risk of injury when closing windows. »

If an obstacle is present, the closing mechanism will stop and the window will roll back a few centimetres.

If an obstacle prevents closing for the next 10 seconds, the closing mechanism will once again stop and the window will roll back another few centimetres.

If in the next 10 seconds you attempt to close the window after it has rolled back the second time, only the closing mechanism will be stopped even if the obstacle is still present. The roll-back function is still connected.

The roll-back function will only be disconnected if you once again attempt to close the window in the following 10 seconds. **In this case, the window will close at full force**.

If you wait for a further 10 seconds, the roll-back function will be once again connected.

Lights and visibility

Lights

Introduction

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 18

The location of the controls of **right-hand drive** cars differs slightly from the location shown here ››› Fig. 129 ››› page 117. However, the symbols indicating the respective positions of the controls remain the same.

⚠ WARNING

Never drive with only the side lights on! The side lights are not bright enough to illuminate the road ahead and to ensure that other road users are able to see you. Always use your dipped beam headlights if it is dark or if visibility is poor.

CAUTION

- **Use the lights in line with local law.**
- **However, drivers always remain responsible for correctly adjusting and using the lights.**

Note

- **An audible warning will be heard when the light control is set to and you remove the ignition key and open the door. Once the driver door is closed (ignition off), the audible warning will stop, whereas the side lights will remain on to light up the stationary vehicle in case this is necessary.**
- **Depending on weather conditions (cold or wet), the lights may mist up temporarily on the inside. This is particularly the case in the event of a difference in temperature between the inside and in front of the light. By switching on the lights, the area through which the beam of light is projected will quickly be demisted, although the edges may remain misted. The real lights and turn signals can mist up. This has no influence on the useful life of the lighting system.**

Control lamps

	It lights up
Rear fog light switched on ››› page 120.	

	It lights up
Front fog lights* switched on ››› page 120.	

	It lights up
Left or right turn signal. The control lamp flashes twice as fast when a turn signal is faulty ››› page 118.	

	It lights up
Main beam on or flasher on »» page 118.	

	It lights up
Bulb failure »» page 83 For example, the information display indicates: **Check front right dipped headlight!**	

Several warning and control lamps light up for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on, signalling that the function is being verified. They will switch off after a few seconds.

⚠ WARNING

Observe the safety warnings »» ⚠ in Warning and control lamps on page 98.

Note

The rear side lights and number plate light contain several bulbs. The control lamp lights up only when there is a fault in all the number plate bulbs or side light bulbs (of a combined tail light). Therefore it is advisable to regularly check the bulb operation.

Side light and dipped beam headlight

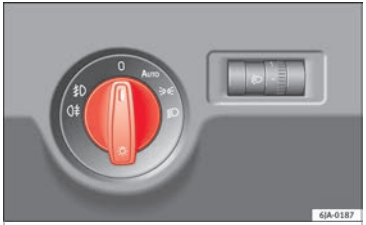


Fig. 129 Instrument panel: light control.

Switching on side lights

– Turn the light switch »» **Fig. 129** to position .

Switching on dipped beam

– Turn the light switch »» **Fig. 129** to position .

Switching off lights (except daytime driving lights)

– Turn the light switch »» **Fig. 129** to position 0.

Main light range control

Fig. 130 Instrument panel: light range control.

– Turn the control »» **Fig. 130** to set the lights to the required setting.

Positions

The control positions roughly correspond to the following vehicle load conditions.

- Two front occupants, luggage compartment empty.
- 1 All seats occupied, luggage compartment empty.
- 2 All seats occupied, luggage compartment fully loaded.
- 3 Driver only, luggage compartment fully loaded.

CAUTION

Always adjust the range of the lights so that: »

- **Your vehicle does not dazzle others, particularly oncoming traffic**
- **The range of the headlights is sufficient for safe driving**

Note

Make sure you set the range of the main lights when the dipped beam headlights are switched on.

Daytime running lights

Daytime running lights are signalling devices for improving road safety. The lights are built into the headlights and come on each time the ignition is turned on if the light switch is in position **0** or **AUTO** ››› **Fig. 129**. It is automatically switched off when the side lights are turned on.

Switching the daytime driving lights on

- Remove the key from the ignition, move the turn signal lever upward (right turn signal), press it back to flash position and hold it there.
- Insert the key and switch on the ignition, holding it in this position for 3 seconds. Then, switch off the ignition. The daytime running light is now activated and the corresponding lights can come on.

Switching the daytime running light off

- Remove the key from the ignition, press the turn signal lever down (left turn signal), press it back to flash position and hold it here.
- Insert the key and switch on the ignition, holding it in this position for 3 seconds. Then, switch off the ignition. The daytime running light is now deactivated and the corresponding lights cannot come on.

OR: activate and deactivate the daytime lights using the Easy Connect system ››› page 21.

Automatic control of the dipped beam in combination with the daytime running lights

If the *dipped beam control* and the *daytime running lights* are activated at the same time, the dipped beams and the instrument panel lighting will automatically come on as required (e.g. when entering a tunnel) and the daytime running lights will switch off. When the automatic dipped beam control switches off the dipped beams (e.g. when coming out of a tunnel), the daytime running lights come back on.

WARNING

The rear lights do not come on with the daytime driving light. A vehicle which does not have the rear lights on may not be visible to other drivers in the darkness, if it is raining or in conditions of poor visibility.

Note

Please observe any relevant legal requirements which may apply in your country.

Turn signal and main beam lever

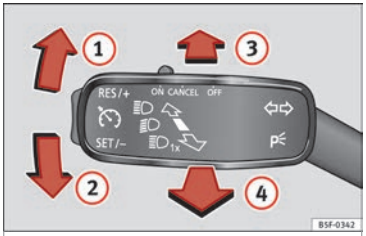


Fig. 131 Turn signal and main beam lever.

The turn signal and main beam lever also operates the parking lights and the headlight flasher.

Right and left-hand ⇨ turn signal ⇦

- Move the lever ››› **Fig. 131** up (1) or down (2).
- Keep the lever held down at the point of resistance for the turn signals to flash for as long as you hold the lever, e.g. when changing lanes.

Convenience turn signals

For the convenience turn signals, move the lever as far as possible upwards or downwards and release the lever. The turn signal will flash three times.

The convenience turn signals are activated and deactivated in the Easy Connect system via the CAR key and the Setup function button ››› page 99.

In vehicles that do not have the corresponding menu, this function can be deactivated in a specialised workshop.

Main beams

- Switch on the dipped beam ››› page 117.
- Press the lever ››› Fig. 131 forward in the direction indicated by arrow 3.
- Pull the lever back to its original position in the direction indicated by arrow 4 to switch the main beam off.

Headlight flasher

- Pull the lever ››› Fig. 131 towards the steering wheel (point of resistance) in the direction indicated by arrow 4.

Parking lights

- Instructions for use ››› page 121.

CAUTION

Never use the main beam headlights or the headlight flasher if they could dazzle other drivers.

Note

- **If the convenience turn signals are operating (three flashes) and the other convenience turn signals are switched on, the active part stops flashing and only flashes once in the new part selected.**
- **The turn signals only work when the ignition is switched on. The corresponding warning lamp ⇦ or ⇨ flashes in the general instrument panel.**
- **The turn signals switch off automatically when the steering wheel is returned to the straight-ahead position.**
- **If a turn signal bulb is defective, the control lamp flashes at double speed.**

Automatic dipped beam control AUTO

If the light switch is in this position AUTO ››› Fig. 129, the side lights, headlights and the number plate lights will turn on or off automatically.

The light is adjusted according to the data recorded by the light sensor that is installed between the windscreen and the inside rear view mirror.

If the light switch is in position AUTO, the symbol AUTO located next to the light switch will illuminate. If the light illuminates automatically, symbol located next to the light switch will also illuminate.

Automatic headlights in case of rain

If the light switch is in position AUTO and is connected to the automatic wipe in case of rain for more than 10 seconds or wipe (position 2 or 3) for longer than 15 seconds, ››› page 125 then the side lights and headlights will automatically switch on.

The light automatically switches off if more than 4 minutes have elapsed and the automatic wipe or wipe (position 2 or 3) have not been switched on.

CAUTION

Do not cover the windscreen light sensor with stickers or similar objects; this could impair operation.

Front fog lights*

Fig. 132 Instrument panel: light switch.

Switching on front fog lights

– First turn the light switch ›› **Fig. 132** to position **AUTO**, or .

– Pull on the light switch to position (1).

The warning lamp lights up on the general instrument panel if the front fog lights are switched on.

Front fog lights with cornering function*

✓ Not valid for vehicles fitted with Full-LED lights

Front fog lights with cornering function provide better lighting of the area around the car when driving through a corner or parking, etc.

Front fog lights with cornering function switch on depending on how far you turn the steering wheel or whether or not the turn signals[1] are switched on, if the following conditions are met:

- The vehicle is stationary, the ignition is switched on or you are moving at a speed of less than 40 km/h (25 mph);
- The daytime driving light is switched off
- The dipped beam is switched on
- The fog lights are switched off
- Reverse gear is not engaged

Rear fog light

Switching on the rear fog light

– First turn the light switch ›› **Fig. 132** ›› **page 120** to position **AUTO**, or .

– Pull on the light switch to position (2).

If the vehicle is not equipped with front fog lights ›› **page 120**, the rear fog light is switched on by turning the switch to position or and pulling it to position (2). This type of switch only has one position.

The ›› **page 98** warning lamp lights up on the general instrument panel if the rear fog lights are switched on.

If you are towing a trailer or caravan equipped with a rear fog light on a vehicle with a **factory-fitted towing bracket or one installed using parts from the original SEAT parts catalogue**, only the rear fog light on the trailer or caravan will light up.

[1] In the event of a conflict between both functions, i.e. if you turn the steering wheel to the left while the right-hand turn signal is on, the turn signals will take priority.

Function “Coming Home”/“Leaving Home”*

This function makes it possible, under poor visibility conditions, to automatically turn on the lights for a brief period of time after the vehicle has been parked or when approaching the vehicle.

The function is automatically turned on if the following conditions are met:

- The light switch is in position AUTO ››› page 119.
- The visibility around the vehicle is reduced.
- The ignition is switched off.

To turn on this function, switch on the headlight flasher prior to exiting the vehicle.

The light is adjusted according to the data recorded by the light sensor that is installed between the windscreen and the inside rear view mirror.

The function automatically turns on the side lights and headlights, the lighting for the entry area on the exterior mirrors and the number plate light.

“Coming Home” function

The light is automatically switched on when the driver door is opened (for 60 seconds after the ignition is switched off).

The lights is switched off when all the doors and the boot lid are closed.

If a door or the boot lid remains open, the light will switch off after 60 seconds.

“Leaving Home” function

The light is automatically switched on when the vehicle is unlocked using the remote control.

The light is switched off after 10 seconds or when the vehicle is locked.

Hazard warning lights switch

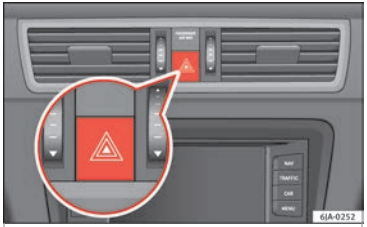


Fig. 133 Instrument panel: switch for hazard warning lights.

– Press the button ⚠ ››› Fig. 133 to switch the hazard warning lights on or off.

The warning lamps on the instrument panel and the warning lamp on the switch will flash at the same time as the turn signals when the hazard warning lights are switched on. The hazard warning lights also work when the ignition is switched off.

The hazard warning lights come on automatically in the event of an accident in which an airbag is triggered.

Note

Switch on the hazard warning lights to warn other road users, for example:

- **When reaching the tail end of a traffic jam**
- **if the vehicle has a technical fault or you are involved in an emergency situation.**

Parking lights*

Parking lights P≤

– Switch the ignition off.

– Move the turn signal lever ››› Fig. 131 ››› page 118 up or down to turn on the right or left-hand parking lights respectively.

Parking light on both sides

– Turn the light switch ››› Fig. 129 A ››› page 117 to position ≤ and engage the steering lock. »

Note

- **The parking lights P⇐ can only be activated with the ignition disconnected.**
- **The parking light will not come on automatically after switching off the ignition if the left- or right-hand turn signal is left on.**

Adjusting the headlights

The light beam of the dipped beam lights is asymmetric: the side of the road on which you are driving is lit more intensely.

When a car that is manufactured in a country that drives on the right travels to a country that drives on the left (or vice versa), it is normally necessary to cover part of the headlight bulbs with stickers or to change the adjustment of the headlights to avoid dazzling other drivers.

In such cases, the regulations specify certain light values that must be complied with for designated points of the light distribution. This is known as “Tourist light”.

The light distribution of the halogen and full-LED headlights of the SEAT Toledo allows the specific “tourist light” values to be met without the need for stickers or changes in the settings.

Note

“Tourist light” is only allowed temporarily. If you are planning a long stay in a country that drives on the other side, you should take the vehicle to an Authorised Technical Service to change the headlights.

Interior lights

Interior lighting

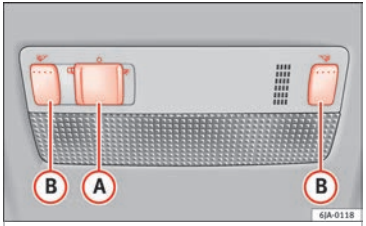


Fig. 134 Interior lighting – version 1.

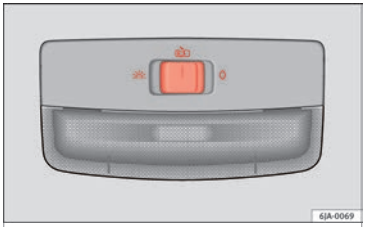


Fig. 135 Interior lighting – version 2.

Read the additional information carefully
››› page 20

Where the courtesy light is on (switch A ››› Fig. 134 in position), the light will come on if:

- the vehicle is unlocked,
- one of the doors is opened,
- The key is removed from the ignition

When the courtesy light is on (switch A in position), the light will switch off if:

- the vehicle is locked,
- the ignition is switched on,
- 30 seconds after all of the doors have been closed

If a door is left open or if switch A is in the position, the interior lighting switches off after about 10 minutes to prevent the battery from running flat.

Rear interior light

Fig. 136 Rear interior light.

Press the button ››› **Fig. 136** to switch the lighting on or off.

Interior lights / ambient light*

The lighting in the central console area, the door handles, the storage pockets in the front doors, the footwell area and the instrument panel trim will switch on fully when the doors are opened and will decrease in intensity while driving with the dipped beam headlights on.

The intensity of the ambient light* can be adjusted using the menu **Easy Connect > Lighting settings > Vehicle interior lighting**››› page 21.

Glove box light

The light will come on automatically when the glove compartment is opened. The light will go out when the glove compartment is closed.

Luggage compartment light

The light switches on automatically when the boot is open and switches off automatically 10 minutes after the boot lid has been opened.

Visibility

Heated rear window

Fig. 137 Heated rear window switch.

– Switch the heated rear window on or off by pressing the button ››› **Fig. 137**, the warning lamp in the button will come on or go off respectively.

The heated rear window only works when the engine is running.

After approximately 7 minutes, the heating device of the rear window **switches off** automatically.

For the sake of the environment

The heated rear window should be switched off as soon as the glass is demisted. By saving electrical power you can also save fuel ››› page 162.

Note

In the event of a drop in voltage in the on-board systems, the heated rear window switches off automatically to ensure enough power to control the engine ››› page 214, Automatic disconnection of electrical equipment.

Sun visors

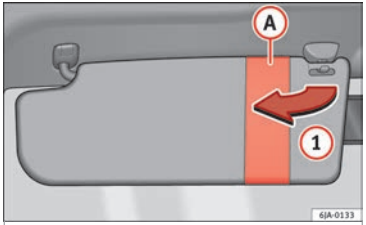


Fig. 138 Driver's sun visor.

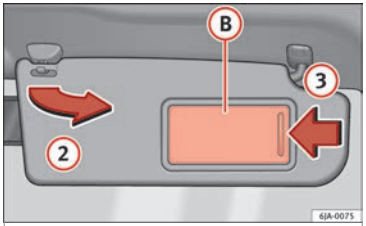


Fig. 139 Front passenger's sun visor.

The sun visors for the driver and the front passenger can be pulled out of their central supports and turned towards the doors in the direction of arrow (1) ››› **Fig. 138** and (2) ››› **Fig. 139** respectively.

The strip (A) is to store small objects such as notepaper, etc.

The front passenger sun visor includes a vanity mirror (B) with a cover. The cover is opened by sliding it in the direction indicated by arrow (3) ››› **Fig. 139**.

⚠ WARNING

Do not turn sun visors with attached objects such as ball-pens, etc. toward the head protection airbag triggering zone on the side windows. The head protection airbags could injure occupants if triggered.

Windscreen wipers and windscreen washers

Introduction

The windscreen wipers and windscreen washers only work when the ignition is switched on.

The speed of the automatic wipe in case of rain is automatically adjusted according to the intensity of the rainfall.

The rear window is wiped once if the windscreen wipers are switched on and reverse gear is engaged.

Fill the windscreen washer fluid ››› **page 210**.

⚠ WARNING

- **Make sure the blades ››› page 53 are in perfect condition for good visibility and safe driving.**
- **In cold conditions, you should not use the wash/wipe system unless you have warmed the windscreen with the heating and ventilation system. The windscreen washer fluid could otherwise freeze on the windscreen and obscure your view of the road.**

ⓘ CAUTION

- **During winter, always check that the windscreen wiper blades are not frozen to the glass before each trip or before switching on the ignition. If you switch on the windscreen wipers when the wiper blades are frozen to the glass, this could damage both the wiper blades and the wiper motor.**
- **If the ignition is switched off when the windscreen wipers are on, they will start operating in the same mode when the ignition is switched back on. The wiper blades may be frozen to the glass at low temperatures when the ignition is switched off.**
- **Carefully separate the frozen wipers from the windscreen or rear window.**
- **Remove snow and ice from the wipers before starting your journey.**
- **Careless handling could lead to the wiper arms damaging the windscreen.**

- **For safety reasons, the wiper blades should be changed once or twice a year. They can be purchased at a SEAT Authorised Service.**
- **The ignition cannot be switched on while the windscreen wiper arms are in a raised position. Otherwise, the windscreen wipers would return to their original position and could damage the paintwork on the bonnet.**

Note

Keep the wipers clean. The wipers can be soiled with remains of wax solutions from car washes **›› page 194**.

- **On vehicles equipped with windscreen washer jets, these are heated once the engine is running.**

Operating windscreen wipers and washers

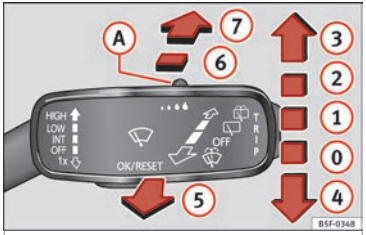


Fig. 140 Window wiper lever.

Short wipe

– Give the windscreen a **brief** wipe by moving the lever down to position (4) **›› Fig. 140**.

Wipe intervals/automatic wipe in case of rain rain sensor*

– Push the lever up to position (1) **›› Fig. 140**.

– With switch (A), adjust the wipe interval or rain sensor sensitivity.

Switch (A) has 4 positions.

The rain sensor* is part of the intermittent wipe function.

The rain sensor* controls the frequency of the windscreen wiper intervals, depending on the amount of rain.

Slow wipe

– Push the lever up to position (2) **›› Fig. 140**.

Continuous wipe

– Push the lever up to position (3) **›› Fig. 140**.

Automatic windscreen wash and wipe

– Pull the lever towards the steering wheel, position (5) **›› Fig. 140**, and the windscreen washer and wipers are switched on.

– Release the lever. The washer will stop and the windscreen wipers will keep running for 1-3 wipes (depending on the windscreen washer operating time).

Rear window wiper*

– Press the lever forward to position (6) **›› Fig. 140** and the rear window wiper will run every 6 seconds.

Automatic rear window wash and wipe*

– Press the lever fully forward to position (7) **›› Fig. 140** and the rear window wiper and washer switch on at the same time.

– Release the lever. The rear window washer will stop and the rear window wipers will keep running for 1-3 wipes (depending on the jet operating time). **When released, the lever remains in position (6)**.

Switching off the wipers

– Move the lever to position (0) **›› Fig. 140**.

WARNING

The rain sensor may not detect enough rain to switch on the wipers.

- **If necessary, switch on the wipers manually when water on the windscreen obstructs visibility.**

»

Note

Do not put stickers on the windscreen in front of the rain sensor*. This may cause sensor disruption or faults.

Headlight washers*

The headlight washers operate briefly if the dipped headlights or headlights are on and the lever is moved to position (5) ››› Fig. 140. The headlight washer system also operates every 10 windscreen wash cycles.

Clean off stubborn dirt (insects, etc.) from the headlights at regular intervals, for instance when filling the fuel tank. Please observe the following indications ››› page 196, Headlights.

To ensure the system works properly in winter, keep the nozzle holders free of snow and remove any ice with a de-icer spray.

CAUTION

Never pull on the nozzle holders. Risk of damage to the system!

Mirrors

Rear view mirror with manual anti-dazzle device

Basic settings

– Push the lever at the bottom of the mirror forward.

Rear vision mirror anti-dazzle setting

– Pull the lever at the bottom of the mirror towards you.

Exterior mirrors

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 13

Before beginning any journey, adjust the rear view mirrors for a good rear visibility.

WARNING

- **Convex (wide-angle) rear vision mirrors give a larger field of vision. However, they make objects appear smaller and further away than they really are. For this reason, you should not rely on these rear vision mirrors for judging the distance of vehicle behind.**
- **If possible, use the interior rear vision mirror to estimate distances to vehicles behind you.**

Note

- **Exterior mirrors are only heated when the engine is running.**
- **Do not touch the exterior mirrors when the heating system is running.**
- **If the electrical adjustment should ever fail to operate, the rear vision mirrors can be adjusted by hand by pressing the edge of the mirror glass.**
- **Visit the technical service in the event of a fault in the electrical rear vision mirror adjustment system.**

Seats and head restraints

Adjusting seats and head restraints

Introduction

Read the additional information carefully
››› page 11

Set the driver seat in such a way that the pedals can be fully depressed with your legs slightly bent.

Set the driver seat backrest so that you can reach the upper point of the steering wheel with your arms slightly bent.

The correct seat position is very important for:

- reaching all of the controls safely and quickly,
- a relaxed posture that will not produce fatigue,
- **maximum protection from the seat belts and airbag system**

⚠ WARNING

- **Adjust the driver seat only when the vehicle is stationary. Risk of accident!**
- **Be careful when adjusting the front seats! Careless and uncontrolled adjustment can cause injuries.**
- **The backrests must not be reclined too far back while driving. This could limit the effect of the seat belts and the airbag system. Risk of injury!**
- **Never transport more than the permitted amount of people in your vehicle.**
- **Every occupant in the vehicle must properly fasten and wear the seat belt belonging to his or her seat. Children must be protected with an appropriate child restraint system** **››› page 72, Transporting children safely.**
- **The front seats, head restraints and seat belts must always be adjusted to the size of the vehicle occupant to provide you and your passengers with the greatest possible protection.**
- **Your feet should remain in the footwell while the vehicle is moving; never rest them on the dash panel, on the window or on the seat! This also applies to passengers. An incorrect sitting position exposes you to an increased risk of injury in case of a sudden braking or an accident. If the airbag is triggered, you could sustain severe injuries due to an incorrect sitting position!**
- **It is important for the driver and front passenger to keep a distance of at least 25 cm from the steering wheel and dash panel. Failure to respect the minimum distance means that the airbag will not protect you. Risk of fatal injury if triggered!**
- **Objects must not be placed in the footwell, as they could move to the area of the pedals in the event of a braking manoeuvre or change of direction. This would prevent the clutch, brake or accelerator from being pressed.**
- **Do not place any items on the front passenger seat other than those allowed (e.g. child seat). Risk of accident!**

Note

After a certain time, the backrest angle adjustment mechanism may gain a certain amount of play.

head restraints

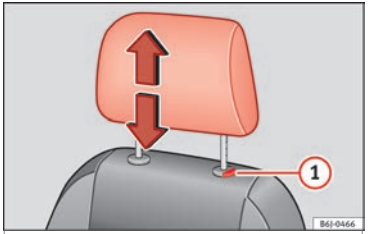


Fig. 141 Front head restraint: adjust or remove.

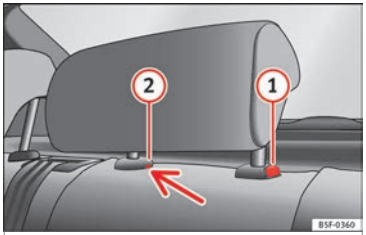


Fig. 142 Rear centre head restraint: release point.

Read the additional information carefully
››› page 12

Head restraints cannot be moved up or down or removed on sports seats.

Fitting and removing head restraints on front seats

– Push the head restraint up as far as it will go.

– Press catch (1) ››› **Fig. 141** and remove the head restraint.

– To refit, insert the head restraint into the holes in the backrest, pushing it down until it engages.

Fitting and removing head restraints on rear seats

To remove the head restraint, the corresponding backrest must be partially folded forward.

– Unlock the backrest ››› page 130

– Move the head restraint upwards until it arrives to the top.

– Press button (1) ››› **Fig. 142**, while simultaneously pressing on the security hole (2) ››› **Fig. 142** with a flat screwdriver a maximum of 5 mm wide, and remove the head restraint.

– To refit, insert the head restraint into the holes in the backrest, pushing it down until it engages.

For maximum head restraint protection, adjust the head restraint so that its upper edge is at the same level as the top of your head.

The head restraint must be adjusted in line with the height of users. Correct adjustment of the head restraint, together with the seat belts, ensure effective passenger protection ››› page 56.

⚠ WARNING

- **Badly adjusted head restraints increase the risk of injuries in the event of an accident.**
- **Never drive with the head restraints removed. Risk of injuries!**
- **If the seats are in use, never drive with the rear head restraints in their out-of-use position.**

Seat functions

Heated front seats*

Fig. 143 Heated front seats.

The cushion and backrest of the front seats can be heated electrically.

Press the or ››› Fig. 143 button to switch on and adjust the heated front seats.

Press once to connect the heating at maximum force.

Press the button again to reduce the force of the heating and switch it off. The force is indicated by the number of warning lamps lit on the button.

WARNING

Do not use the heated seat if your perception of pain and/or temperature or that of your passenger is limited, e.g. due to medication, paralysis or chronic illness (e.g. diabetes). It could cause burns on the back, buttocks and legs that are difficult to heal. If you still want to use the heated seat, take frequent breaks on long journeys so that the body can recover from the trip. Ask your doctor about your particular situation.

CAUTION

- **To avoid damaging the heating elements, do not kneel on the seat or apply sharp pressure at a single point to the seat cushion or backrest.**
- **Do not use the heated seats if nobody is sitting on them or if there are items attached to or lying on them, such as a child seat or a bag, etc. This could lead to a fault in the seat heating elements.**
- **Do not clean the seats with anything damp** **››› page 198.**

Note

- **Only connect the heated seats when the engine is running. This provides considerable savings on the battery capacity.**
- **In the event of a drop in voltage in the on-board systems, the heated seats switch off automatically to ensure enough power to control the engine** **››› page 214, Automatic disconnection of electrical equipment.**

Armrest on front seats with inner storage*

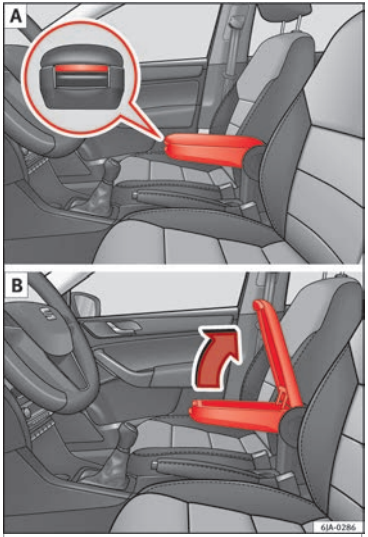


Fig. 144 Armrest/Opening and closing the storage compartment.

Adjusting armrest height

– Lift the armrest as far as it will go and then fold it downward. »

– Raise the armrest until it engages in one of the 5 positions.

Opening storage compartment

– Press the button located on the front of the armrest ››› **Fig. 144** - A.

– Lift the storage compartment lid ››› **Fig. 144** - B.

Armrest on rear seats

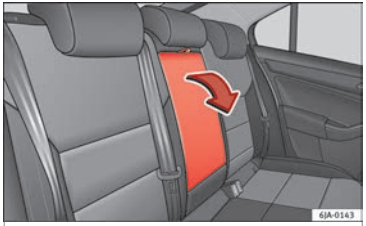


Fig. 145 Rear seats: armrest.

The armrest can be folded away for greater comfort using the handle ››› **Fig. 145**.

Folding down the backrest

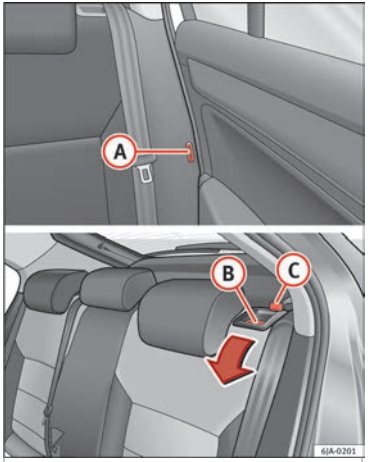


Fig. 146 Unlocking the backrest.

Folding

– Before folding the rear seats, adjust the position of the front seats so that the rear seats are not damaged. When the front seats are adjusted to the rear position, their head restraints should be removed before folding the backrests on the rear seats. Store the removed head restraints in such a way that they cannot be soiled or damaged.

– Insert the seat belt latch plate into hole (A) ››› **Fig. 146** located on the corresponding side of the vehicle – safety position.

– Press the lock button (B) to unlock the backrest and fold it forward.

Returning to the initial position

– Where the head restraint has been removed, insert it into the backrest when partially raised.

– Push the backrest backwards to its original position until the lock button engages – check that it is locked by pulling on the backrest ››› ❗.

– Make sure the red protruding part (C) is not visible.

⚠ WARNING

- **Once the backrests have been lifted, the seat belts and their buckles must be in their initial position – ready for use.**
- **The backrests must be safely locked to ensure any items in the boot cannot move around the interior of the vehicle in the event of a sudden braking manoeuvre. Risk of injuries!**
- **Make sure the rear backrests are correctly locked. Only then will the three-point automatic seat belt on the rear central seat work correctly.**

CAUTION

Take care when handling the rear backrests so as not to damage the seat belts. The seat belt must never be left behind the lifted backrest.

Transport and practical equipment

Practical equipment

Passenger side storage compartment

Fig. 147 Instrument panel: passenger side glove compartment.

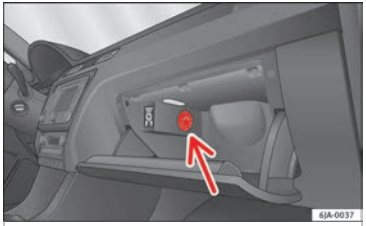


Fig. 148 Storage: cooling control.

Opening and closing passenger side glove compartment

– Pull the catch on the lid in the direction indicated by the arrow ››› **Fig. 147** and open the lid.

– Close the lid and push it until it engages.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the CD player is located in the glove compartment. Separate operating instructions are enclosed for this equipment in the corresponding Instruction Manual.

Glove compartment cooling*

Open or close the air outlet by turning the thumbwheel ››› **Fig. 148**.

If the air outlet is open and the air conditioning is on, the cooled air will be released into the glove compartment.

If the air outlet is open and the air conditioning is off, outdoor air (not conditioned) will be released into the glove compartment.

The air outlet should be closed if the air conditioning is being used in heating mode or where glove compartment cooling is not in use.

WARNING

- **For safety reasons, all storage compartments must be closed while the vehicle is moving.**

»

- **Never place any objects on the instrument panel. These objects could be flown around the interior while the vehicle is moving (on accelerating or turning) and distract you. Risk of accident!**
- **Make sure objects remain in the centre console or other compartments while the vehicle is moving. Otherwise, this could prevent you from braking, changing gear or accelerating. Risk of accident!**

Note

The glove compartment can hold a bottle no larger than 1 litre.

Storage compartment for reflective vest

Fig. 149 Driver's seat: storage compartment

There is a compartment below the driver seat ››› **Fig. 149** to store the reflective vests.

WARNING

The compartment is solely designed to store the reflective vest and no other objects. Objects falling out of the storage compartment could limit or prevent use of the pedals.

CAUTION

The compartment is solely designed to store the reflective vest and no other objects, since there is a risk of damaging the storage compartment.

Storage pocket under the front seats

There is a storage pocket on the rear part of the backrest of the front seats.

These pockets are designed to hold maps, magazines, etc.

WARNING

Do not place heavy objects in the pockets. Risk of injury!

CAUTION

Do not place overly large objects in the pockets (e.g. bottles) or objects with sharp edges. Risk of damage to the pockets and the upholstery.

Drink holder in the centre console

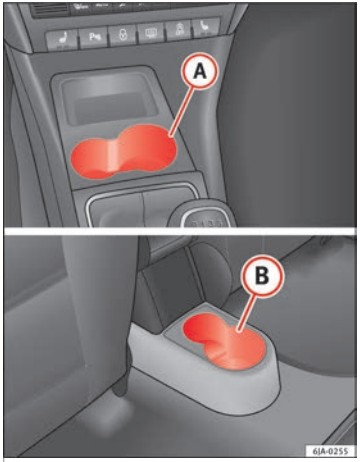


Fig. 150 Centre console: drink holder

(A) Front drink holder in the centre console

(B) Rear drink holder in the centre console

WARNING

- **Do not put hot drinks in the drink holders. They could spill while the vehicle is moving. Risk of scalding!**

- **Do not use cups or glasses made of fragile materials (e.g. glass or china). These could cause injury in the event of an accident.**

CAUTION

Avoid putting open drinks containers in the drink holder while the vehicle is moving. They could spill (e.g. on braking) and cause damage to the electrical equipment or the seat covers.

Drink holder in rear seat armrest

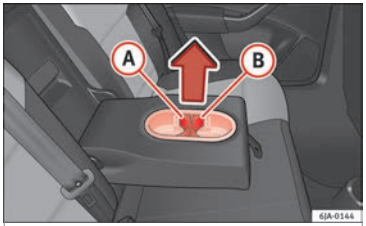


Fig. 151 Rear seats armrest: drink holder

Two drinks can be placed in the drink holder.

Use the detachable parts (A) and (B) ››› **Fig. 151** to change the size of the holes.

– Remove part (A) or (B) in the direction indicated by the arrow and replace in the required position in the drink holder.

Cigarette lighter*

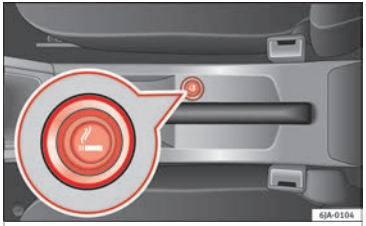


Fig. 152 Centre console: lighter

The cigarette lighter is located at the front of the centre console ››› **Fig. 152**.

Using the cigarette lighter

– Press the cigarette lighter knob ››› **Fig. 152**.

– Wait for the lighter to spring out.

– Pull out the cigarette lighter and light the cigarette on the glowing coil immediately.

– Put the cigarette lighter back in its socket.

WARNING

- **Take care when using the cigarette lighter! Carelessness or negligence when using the cigarette lighter can cause burns and serious injuries.**
- **The cigarette lighter also works when the ignition is off and when the ignition key is removed. Therefore, never leave children unsupervised in the vehicle.**

Note

- **The 12 V power socket of the cigarette lighter can also be used as a power source for electrical appliances** ››› page 134, 12V Power socket.
- **Additional information** ››› page 192, Accessories and modifications to the vehicle.

Ashtrays*

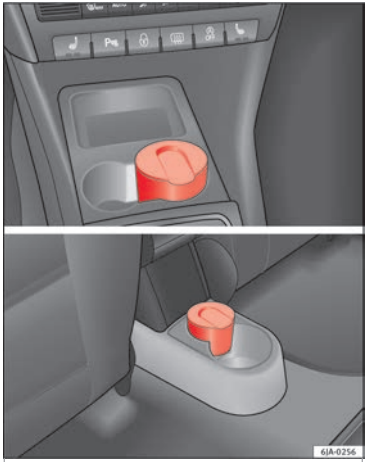


Fig. 153 Centre console: front ashtray/rear ashtray.

Removing the ashtray

– Pull the ashtray ››› **Fig. 153** upwards to remove.

Inserting the ashtray

– Push the ashtray down.

⚠ WARNING

Never put flammable materials in the ashtray. Risk of fire!

ⓘ CAUTION

Never hold onto the ashtray by the lid when removing it. Risk of breaking the lid.

12V Power socket

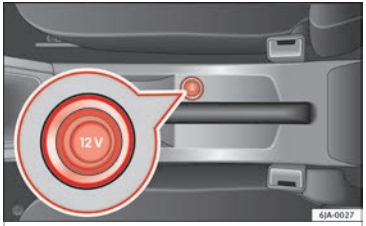


Fig. 154 Centre console: 12 V power socket.

The 12 V power socket is located at the front of the centre console ››› **Fig. 154**.

Using the power socket

– Open the cover or remove the cigarette lighter concealing the socket.

– Insert the plug of the electrical appliance into the socket.

Additional information ››› **page 192, Accessories and modifications to the vehicle.**

⚠ WARNING

- **Improper use of the sockets or electrical appliances can cause a fire and lead to burns and other serious injuries.**
- **Never leave children unsupervised in the vehicle. The 12 V power socket is also functional when the ignition is switched off and the key is removed.**
- **Should the connected appliance overheat, immediately switch it off and disconnect it from the socket.**

ⓘ CAUTION

- **The 12 V power socket can only be used to power appliances with a power rating of up to 120 watts.**
- **Never exceed the maximum permitted power, as this could cause damage to the vehicle electrical installation.**
- **With the engine switched off, however, the vehicle battery will drain. Risk of discharging the battery!**
- **Only use suitable plugs so as not to damage the power socket.**
- **Only use appliances that have been tested for electromagnetic compatibility in compliance with current regulations.**
- **Before switching the ignition on or off, unplug the appliances from the power socket to**

protect them from any damage caused by fluctuations in voltage.

- **Follow the instructions for use of connected appliances!**

Multimedia compartment

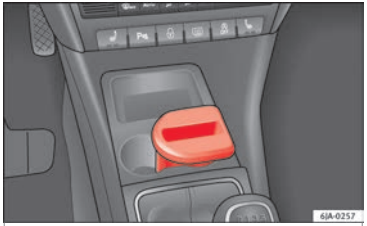


Fig. 155 Front centre console: multimedia compartment.

The multimedia compartment is in the storage compartment of the front centre console ››› **Fig. 155**.

The compartment can be used to hold mobile phones, mp3 players or similar devices.

⚠ WARNING

Never use the multimedia compartment as an ashtray or to store flammable materials. Risk of fire!

Storage compartment for glasses*

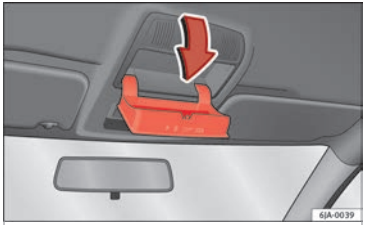


Fig. 156 Close-up of roof panel: storage compartment for eyeglasses.

– Press the compartment lid and it will drop down ››› **Fig. 156**.

⚠ WARNING

This compartment must only remain open when removing or replacing glasses.

ⓘ CAUTION

- **Do not place heat-sensitive objects in the compartment as they could be damaged.**
- **The side compartment supports a maximum load of 0.25 kg.**

Coat hooks*

The coat hooks are located on the B-pillars and on the handles on the interior lining above each rear door.

⚠ WARNING

- **Make sure that any items of clothing hanging from the coat hooks do not obstruct your view to the rear.**
- **Only use the coat hooks for light items of clothing and make sure that there are no heavy or sharp objects in the pockets.**
- **Do not use clothes hangers to hang up the clothing, as this could interfere with the function of the head-protection airbags.**

ⓘ CAUTION

The side hooks support a maximum load of 2 kg.

Front seat backrest net pockets

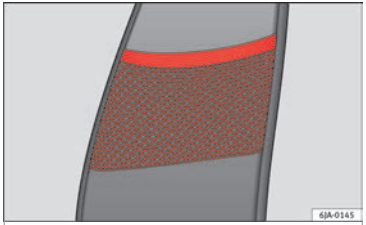


Fig. 157 Front seats backrests: net pockets.

There are net pockets on the inside part of the front seats backrests ››› **Fig. 157**.

These pockets are designed to hold light-weight objects such as a mobile phone or an mp3 player.

⚠ WARNING

- **Do not exceed the maximum load that the net pockets can support. Heavy objects cannot be safely secured. Risk of injuries!**

ⓘ CAUTION

- **The net pockets support a maximum load of 150 g.**
- **Do not place overly large objects in the pockets (e.g. bottles) or objects with sharp edges. Risk of damage to the pockets.**

Compartments in the centre console

Fig. 158 Centre console: storage compartment

Open storage compartment in centre console ››› **Fig. 158**.

Storage compartment in front door

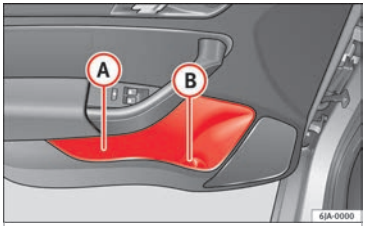


Fig. 159 Storage compartment in door trim.

There is a bottle carrier in part (B) ››› **Fig. 159** of the storage compartment in the front door.

⚠ WARNING

Only use part (A) ››› Fig. 159 of the compartment in the front door to store objects that do not protrude from it so as not obstruct the deployment area of the side airbags.

Storage compartment in the luggage compartment*

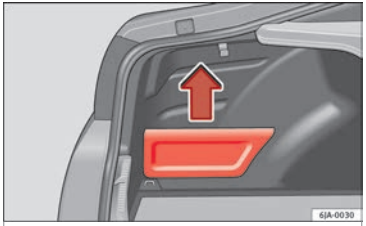


Fig. 160 Luggage compartment: storage compartment

The lid from the side storage compartment can be removed to increase the size of the boot.

– Hold onto the top of the lid and pull it out in the direction indicated by the arrow ››› **Fig. 160**.

CAUTION

- **The compartments are designed to hold small objects with a total weight of 1.5 kg.**
- **Make sure you do not damage the storage compartment or the boot trim when using the compartment.**

Storing objects

Loading the luggage compartment

All luggage and other loose objects must be safely secured in the luggage compartment.

Unsecured objects which shift back and forth could impair the driving safety or driving characteristics of the vehicle by shifting the centre of gravity.

– Distribute the load evenly in the luggage compartment.

– Place heavy objects as far forward as possible in the luggage compartment.

– Place the heavy objects first.

– Secure heavy objects to the fastening rings ››› page 137.

WARNING

- **Loose luggage and other objects in the luggage compartment could cause serious injuries.**
- **Always stow objects in the luggage compartment and secure them on the fastening rings.**
- **Use suitable straps to secure heavy objects.**
- **During sudden manoeuvres or accidents, loose objects can be thrown forward, injuring vehicle occupants or passers-by. This increased risk of injury will be further increased if a loose object is struck by an inflating airbag. If this happens, objects may shoot outward like a missile. Risk of fatal injury.**
- **Please note that the centre of gravity may shift when transporting heavy objects; this may affect vehicle handling and lead to an accident. Therefore, it is essential to adjust your speed and driving style accordingly, to avoid accidents.**
- **Never exceed the allowed axle weights or allowed maximum weight. If said weights are exceeded, the driving characteristics of the vehicle may change, leading to accidents, injuries and damage to the vehicle.**
- **Never leave your vehicle unattended, especially when the rear lid is open. Children could climb into the luggage compartment, closing the door behind them; they will be trapped and run the risk of death.**
- **Never allow children to play in or around the vehicle. Close and lock all the doors and rear lid when you leave the vehicle. Before you lock the vehicle, make sure that there are no adults or children in the vehicle.**

Note

- **Air circulation in the vehicle helps reduce fogging of the windows. Used air escapes through ventilation slits in the side trim of the luggage compartment. Ensure that the ventilation slots are never covered.**
- **Straps for securing the load to the fastening rings are commercially available.**

Fastening rings*

There can be four fastening rings in the luggage compartment for fastening luggage and other objects.

– Always use suitable and undamaged straps to secure luggage and other objects to the fastening rings ››› ⚠ in Loading the luggage compartment on page 137.

– Pull up the fastening rings to attach the straps.

During a collision or an accident, even small and light objects can build up so much energy that they can cause very severe injuries. The amount of kinetic “energy” depends on the speed of the vehicle and the weight of the object. The most significant factor, however, is the speed of the vehicle.

Example: An object weighing 4.5 kg is lying unsecured in the vehicle. During a frontal collision at a speed of 50 km/h (31 mph), this »

object generates a force corresponding to 20 times its weight. That means that the effective weight of the object increases to approximately 90 kg. You can imagine the severity of the injuries which might be sustained if this "object" strikes an occupant as it flies through the interior of the vehicle. This increased risk of injury will be further increased if a loose object is struck by an inflating airbag.

⚠ WARNING

- **If pieces of baggage or other objects are secured to the fastening rings with inappropriate or damaged retaining cords, injuries could result in the event of braking manoeuvres or accidents.**
- **Never secure a child seat on the fastening rings.**

Luggage compartment

Introduction

Please observe the following points to ensure the vehicle handles well at all times:

– Distribute the load as evenly as possible.

– Place heavy objects as far forward in the luggage compartment as possible.

– Secure luggage using the fastening rings or retaining net ››› **page 139**.

During an accident, even small and light objects can have so much kinetic energy that they can cause very severe injuries. The amount of kinetic energy depends on the speed of the vehicle and the weight of the object. However, the speed of the vehicle is the most important factor.

Example: An unsecured object weighing 4.5 kg produces energy corresponding to 20 times its weight in a frontal collision at 50 km/h (31 mph). This means that its weight reaches around 90 kg. You can imagine the severity of the injuries that might be sustained if this "projectile" strikes an occupant as it flies through the vehicle interior.

⚠ WARNING

- **Store objects in the luggage compartment and secure to the fastening points.**
- **In an accident or sudden manoeuvre, loose objects in the interior can be flung forward and possibly injure vehicle occupants or others. This risk is even greater if the flying objects hit a triggering airbag. In this case, any rebounding objects could injure vehicle occupants. Risk of fatal injuries!**
- **Take into account that transporting heavy objects changes the centre of gravity that could also cause changes in vehicle handling. Risk of accident! Therefore, always adjust your speed and driving style to suit these circumstances.**
- **Securing the load to the rings using unsuitable or damaged straps could lead to injuries in the event of an accident or sudden braking manoeuvre. Secure suitable straps safely to the rings to ensure this does not happen.**
- **Position the load so it cannot move forward during a sudden braking manoeuvre. Risk of injuries!**
- **If transporting sharp or dangerous objects in the space provided when the rear seats are folded, ensure the safety of the occupant of the remaining rear seat** ››› **page 58****.**
- **If the rear seat located alongside a folded seat is occupied, ensure safety, for example, by placing the load so that it stops the seat from folding backward in the event of being hit from behind.**
- **Never drive with the rear lid open or half-closed, exhaust gases may penetrate into the interior of the vehicle. Danger of poisoning!**
- **Never exceed the allowed axle loads or allowed maximum weight. Risk of accident!**
- **Never transport passengers in the luggage compartment!**

ⓘ CAUTION

Make sure sharp objects stored in the boot cannot not damage the rear window heating filaments.

Note

Tyre pressure must be adapted to suit the load **›› page 216, Useful life of tyres.**

Category N1 vehicles

Category N1 vehicles with no protection grille must use a retaining set compliant with Standard EN 12195 (1 – 4) to secure the load.

Retaining elements*

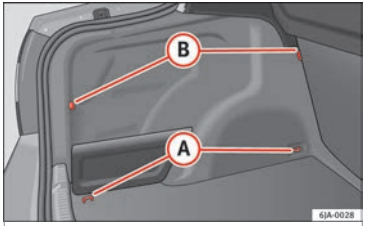


Fig. 161 Luggage compartment: retaining elements.

The following retaining elements are fitted in the boot **›› Fig. 161**:

(A) Rings to secure the load and the retaining nets.

(B) Rings used solely for the retaining nets.

CAUTION

The rings support a maximum load of 3.5 kN (350 kg).

Note

The front ring (B) is below the folding backrest of the rear seats ›› Fig. 161.

Hook*

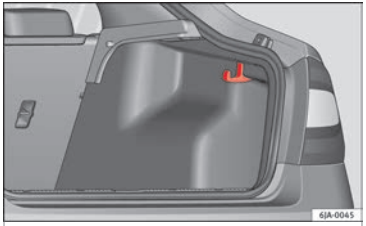


Fig. 162 Luggage compartment: hook.

There are hooks on both sides of the boot to secure light items of luggage such as bags, etc. **›› Fig. 162**.

CAUTION

The side hooks support a maximum load of 7.5 kg.

Retaining nets*

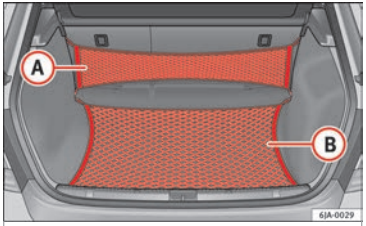


Fig. 163 Retaining nets.

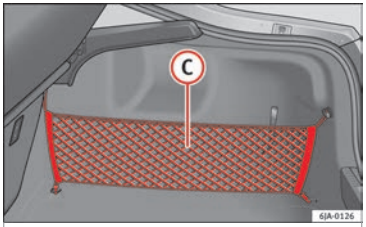


Fig. 164 Retaining nets.

Example of securing retaining nets **›› Fig. 163** and **›› Fig. 164**.

(A) Sideways bag

(B) Ground net

(C) Lengthways bag

»

⚠ WARNING

Do not exceed the maximum load that the nets can support. Heavy objects cannot be safely secured. Risk of injury!

CAUTION

- **The retaining nets support a maximum load of 1.5 kg.**
- **Do not place any item with sharp edges in the net. Risk of damaging the net!**

Rear shelf

Fig. 165 Remove the shelf.

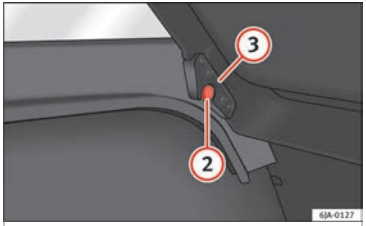


Fig. 166 Remove the shelf.

The shelf can be removed if a large load is to be transported.

Removing the shelf

– Remove the straps from the shelf (1) ››› **Fig. 165**.

– Remove the shelf from its housing (2) by knocking it gently from underneath between the supports.

Fitting the shelf

– Place the shelf on the side supports on the trim.

– Adjust the shelf supports (3) ››› **Fig. 166** to fit the supports (2) in the trim.

– Fit into place by knocking the top of the shelf gently between the supports.

– Attach the straps (1) to the tray.

⚠ WARNING

Do not place objects on the rear shelf that could endanger the vehicle occupants in case of a sudden braking manoeuvre or an accident.

CAUTION

- **The rear shelf supports a maximum load of 1 kg.**
- **If handled incorrectly, the tray could bend on closing the rear lid and become damaged or damage the trim. Follow the instructions below:**
  - **The shelf supports (3) ››› Fig. 166 must be securely in place in the trim supports (2).**
  - **The size of the load must not exceed the height of the shelf.**
  - **When open, the shelf must not be bent against the shelf seal.**
  - **There must be no objects in the space between the open shelf and the backrest of the rear seat.**

Note

The shelf will lift when the rear lid is opened.

Roof rack*

Introduction

⚠ WARNING

- The load on the roof carrier must be properly secured. Risk of accident!
- Always secure the load using retaining straps that are in good condition.
- Distribute the load evenly.
- When transporting heavy or large objects on the roof, any change in normal vehicle behaviour due to a change in the centre of gravity or increased wind resistance must be taken into account. Risk of accident! For this reason, speed and driving style must be adjusted for the situation.
- Avoid sudden manoeuvres and braking.
- Adjust your driving style to suit visibility, the weather and road and traffic conditions.
- Never exceed the allowed axle loads or allowed maximum weight. Risk of accident!

ⓘ CAUTION

- Only use SEAT-authorised roof carriers.
- Where roof carriers from other systems are used or where they are not fitted properly, any damage caused to the vehicle will not be covered by the warranty. Therefore, carefully follow the Instruction Manual for installation of the roof carrier.
- Remember that the rear lid must not hit the roof load.
- The total height of the vehicle increases according to the roof load. Compare the height of the vehicle with the heights of bridges or other underpasses, for example, the height of the garage door.
- Do not forget to remove the roof carrier before entering an automatic carwash.
- Take into account that the load must not damage the aerial located on the roof.

For the sake of the environment

If aerodynamic resistance increases, fuel consumption will also increase.

Attachment points

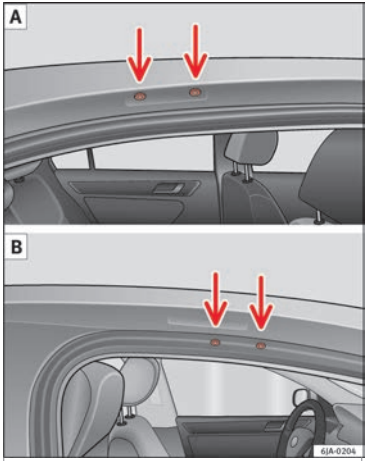


Fig. 167 Basic roof carrier attachment points.

Location of the basic roof carrier attachment points ››› **Fig. 167**:

(A) Rear attachment points

(B) Front attachment points

Install and remove following the instructions given. »

CAUTION

Follow the instructions given in the manual.

Roof load

The maximum permissible roof load (including the support system) of **75 kg** and the total authorised weight of the vehicle must not be exceeded.

It will not be possible to carry the full maximum load if the roof carrier you are using is rated for a load which is less than this figure. In this case, you can only load the roof carrier to the maximum load permitted in your installation manual.

Air conditioning

Heating and air conditioning

General notes

The power of the heating depends on the temperature of the coolant. Therefore, maximum power is only obtained when the engine has reached operating temperature.

The temperature and humidity of the air inside the vehicle decrease when the cooling system is turned on. This therefore increases the comfort of all vehicle occupants when outside temperatures and humidity are high. It also helps prevent the windows from misting over during cold periods of the year.

The air recirculation system can be switched on temporarily to increase the cooling effect.

Keep the air intake slots in front of the windscreen clear of ice, snow or leaves to ensure unimpaired heating and cooling.

When the air conditioning is on, **condensation** can drip from the evaporator in the air cooling system and form a pool underneath the vehicle. This is normal and does not indicate a leak!

WARNING

- **All windows must be clear of ice, snow and condensation for driving safety. Therefore, make sure you familiarise yourself with the correct use of heating and ventilation, window demisting and defrosting and cooling.**
- **Never use the air recirculation system for too long, as it prevents fresh air from entering the vehicle and used air can cause tiredness, reduce your attention span and cause the windows to mist over. This increases the risk of an accident. Switch off the air recirculation system as soon as the windows begin to mist over.**

WARNING

Do not switch off Climatronic for longer than necessary.

- **Switch Climatronic back on as soon as the windows begin to mist over.**

Note

- **Used air escapes through ventilation slots in the rear of the luggage compartment.**
- **Smoking is not recommended while the air recirculation system is in use, as the smoke drawn from the interior of the vehicle settles in the evaporator of the air conditioning system. This causes a persistent, unpleasant smell while the system is running that is time-consuming and expensive (evaporator replacement) to eliminate.**
- **To guarantee proper operation, never cover the air outlets in the luggage compartment.**

Economic use of the air-conditioning system

When the air conditioning is switched on, the compressor consumes engine power and has influence on fuel consumption.

If the vehicle interior has overheated due to excessive solar radiation, it is best to open the windows or doors to allow the hot air to escape.

While in motion, the air conditioning should not be switched on if the windows are open.

If the interior temperature can be reached without switching on the air conditioning, the fresh air mode should be used.

For the sake of the environment

Saving fuel reduces emissions.

Faults

If the air conditioning does not work at outside temperatures above +5°C (+41°F) then the system is faulty. This may be due to one of the following reasons:

- One of the fuses has blown. Check the fuse and replace if necessary ››› page 80.
- The air conditioning compressor has switched off temporarily because of increased engine coolant temperature ››› page 97.

If you cannot repair the fault yourself or where cooling power continues to drop, switch off the system. Contact a specialised service.

Air vents

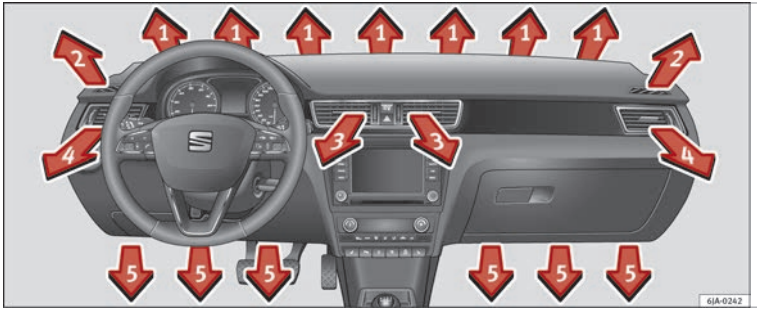


Fig. 168 Air vents

Opening air vents 3 and 4

– Turn the vertical circular control upwards. »

Closing air vents 3 and 4

– Turn the vertical circular control downwards.

Changing the direction of air delivery from air vents 3 and 4

– The air circulation height can be varied by changing the position of the sliding adjuster upwards or downwards ››› Fig. 168.

– The air circulation direction can be varied by changing the position of the sliding adjuster to the right or to the left.

The flow of air from the vents is controlled using control (C) ››› Fig. 169. Vents **3** ››› Fig. 168 and **4** can be opened and closed individually.

Depending on the position of the adjusters and on the weather, open vents can provide air which is either heated, unheated or cooled.

Heating and fresh air

Operation

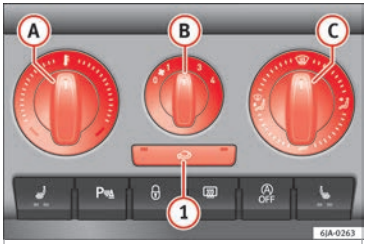


Fig. 169 Heating: controls.

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 38

Temperature selection

– Turn rotary control (A) ››› Fig. 169 clockwise to increase the temperature.

– Turn rotary control (A) anti-clockwise to reduce the temperature.

Blower selection

– Turn rotary control (B) ››› Fig. 169 to position 1 to 4 to switch the blower on.

– Turn rotary control (B) to position 0 to switch the blower off.

– Press button (1) ››› ⚠ in Air recirculation on page 145 to close the fresh air vent.

Air distribution selection

– Turn rotary control (C) ››› Fig. 169 to select the air vents ››› page 143, Air vents you wish to activate.

All controls, except control (B) ››› Fig. 169, can be set to any intermediate position.

Leave the blower activated at all times to prevent the windows from misting over.

Note

If the system is set so that all of the air is used to defrost the windows, no air is supplied to the footwell area. This could limit heating comfort.

Air recirculation

Air recirculation prevents unpleasant smells, e.g. when passing through a tunnel or in queuing traffic, from entering the interior.

If the rotary switch (C) ››› Fig. 169 is in the thaw position, the recirculation flap will always be open (button light off).

If the rotary switch (C) is switched from any position to the thaw position, recirculation will be automatically deactivated.

Connecting the recirculation

In any position of rotary switch (C) except thaw:

- Press button (1) ››› Fig. 169, the switch's lamp will light up, indicating that air recirculation inside the vehicle has been activated.

Disconnecting the recirculation

In any position of rotary switch (C) except thaw:

- Press button (1) again and the button's lamp will go off, indicating that air recirculation from the outside has been activated.

In the thaw position of rotary switch (C), the entry of air into the vehicle interior is always from the outside.

⚠ WARNING

Read and observe the safety warnings ››› ⚠ in General notes on page 142.

Air conditioning (manual)*

General notes

The air cooling system only works if A/C button (2) ››› Fig. 170 ››› page 145 is pressed and under following conditions:

- The engine is running,
- The outside temperature is above +2°C (+36°F),
- The blower control is in position 1–4.

When the cooling system is on and under certain conditions, air can be blown from the vents at a temperature of approximately +5°C (+41°F). In the event of prolonged, irregular distribution of the air flow from the outlets and significant differences in temperature, e.g. on leaving the vehicle, sensitive people may catch cold.

Note

A visit to the specialised service once a year is recommended to clean the air conditioning system.

Manual operation

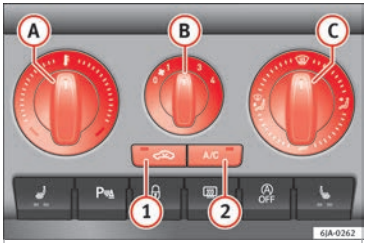


Fig. 170 Air conditioning: controls.

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 37

Temperature selection

– Turn rotary control (A) ››› Fig. 170 clockwise to increase the temperature.

– Turn rotary control (A) anti-clockwise to reduce the temperature.

Blower selection

– Turn rotary control (B) ››› Fig. 170 to position 1 to 4 to switch the blower on.

– Turn rotary control (B) to position 0 to switch the blower off.

– Press button (1) ››› page 146, Air recirculation to close the fresh air vent.

Air distribution selection

– Turn rotary control (C) ››› Fig. 170 to select the air vents ››› page 143 you wish to activate.

Switching cooling on and off

– Press the button A/C (2) ››› Fig. 170 and the lamp in the button will illuminate.

– Press the A/C (2) button again and the light in the button will switch off.

»

Coldest setting

– On turning control (A) to the coldest setting (blue indicator), buttons (1) and (2) A/C, light up

– The recirculation function is activated automatically in order to cool faster.

Note

• If the air distribution is directed towards the windows, all, of the heating power is used to defrost the windscreen. No warm air is directed to the footwell area. This could limit heating comfort.

• The AC button lamp will illuminate after the system has been switched on, even if not all of the conditions for cooling system operations are met. Cooling is indicated as available once all of the conditions are met **››› page 145, General notes.**

Air recirculation

Air recirculation prevents unpleasant smells, e.g. when passing through a tunnel or in queuing traffic, from entering the interior.

If the rotary switch (C) ››› Fig. 170 is in the thaw position, the recirculation flap will always be open (button light off).

If the rotary switch (C) is switched from any position to the thaw position, recirculation will be automatically deactivated.

Connecting the recirculation

In any position of rotary switch (C) except thaw:

• Press button (1) ››› Fig. 170, the switch's lamp will light up, indicating that air recirculation inside the vehicle has been activated.

Disconnecting the recirculation

In any position of rotary switch (C) except thaw:

• Press button (1) again and the button's lamp will go off, indicating that air recirculation from the outside has been activated.

In the thaw position of rotary switch (C), the entry of air into the vehicle interior is always from the outside.

⚠ WARNING

Read and observe the safety warnings **››› ⚠ in General notes on page 142.**

Climatronic* (automatic air conditioning)

General notes

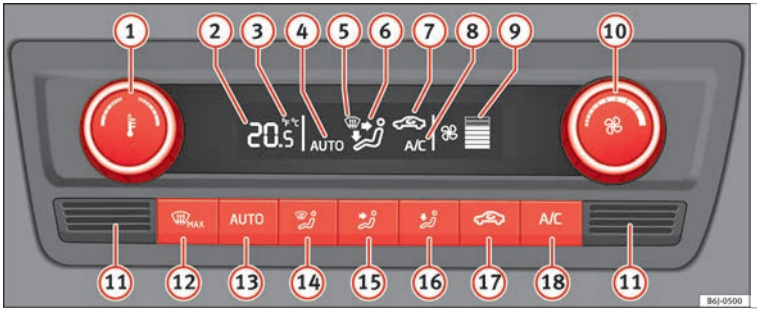


Fig. 171 Climatronic: controls.

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 36

Climatronic automatically maintains a comfortable temperature. To do so, it automatically regulates the supplied air temperature and the blower and air distribution levels. The system also allows for the effect of sunlight, so there is no need for manual adjustment. It also has a humidity sensor that helps to automatically demist the windscreen.

Automatic operations ››› page 148 guarantee maximum comfort any time of year.

Climatronic description

Cooling only works if the following conditions are met:

- The engine is running
- the outside temperature is above +2°C (+36°F);
- A/C (18) ››› **Fig. 171** switched on.

Starting the Climatronic

The corresponding function will be switched on when a button is pressed, turning on the air conditioning if it was switched off, with the exception of button (17) ››› **Fig. 171** (recirculation).

Switching off the Climatronic

- Turn control (10) to the left until the segments of column (9) ››› **Fig. 171** switch off.
- After **1 second** has elapsed, turn the control again to switch off the display.

In order to ensure engines subject to heavy loads are cooled, the air conditioning compressor is switched off in the event of high coolant temperatures.

Recommended setting for all seasons of the year

- Set the required temperature. We recommend +22°C (72°F).

»

- Press the AUTO button (13) ››› Fig. 171.
- Adjust vents **3** and **4** ››› page 143 so that the air flow is directed slightly upwards.

Change between degrees Centigrade and degrees Fahrenheit

Keep the AUTO and A/C ››› Fig. 171 buttons held down for **2 seconds** at the same time. The data is displayed on the screen in the units required.

Note

- **A visit to the specialised service once a year is recommended to clean the Climatronic system.**
- **The interior temperature sensor (11) ››› Fig. 171 is at the bottom. Do not cover it with stickers or the like, as this could have a negative effect on Climatronic operations.**

Automatic mode

Automatic mode is used to maintain a constant temperature and demist the windows inside the vehicle.

Switching on automatic mode

- Set the interior temperature between +16°C (+64°F) and +29°C (+84°F).
- Adjust vents **3** ››› page 143 and **4** so that the air flow is directed slightly upwards.
- Press the AUTO button (13) ››› Fig. 171 and **AUTO** displayed on the screen.

Automatic mode is switched off by pressing the air distribution buttons or increasing or decreasing the blower speed. However, the temperature remains regulated.

Adjusting the temperature

- When you switch on the ignition, control (1) ››› Fig. 171 can be used to set the required interior temperature.

It is possible to select interior temperatures from +16°C (+64°F) to +29°C (+84°F). In this range the temperature is regulated automatically. If a temperature below +16°C (+64°F) is selected, “LO” is displayed on the screen. If a temperature above +29°C (+84°F) is selected, “HI” is displayed on the screen. At both extremes, Climatronic works at maximum cooling or heating power, respectively. The temperature is not regulated.

In the event of prolonged, irregular distribution of the air flow from the outlets (particularly the footwells) and significant differences in temperature, e.g. on leaving the vehicle, sensitive people may catch cold.

Air recirculation

Air recirculation prevents unpleasant smells, e.g. when passing through a tunnel or in queuing traffic, from entering the interior.

Switching on air recirculation mode

- Press button (17) ››› Fig. 171 and the symbol is displayed on the screen.

Switching off air recirculation mode

- Press button (17) ››› Fig. 171 and the symbol disappears from the screen.

WARNING

Read and observe the safety warnings ››› ⚠ in General notes on page 142.

Note

If air recirculation mode remains on for 15 minutes, the symbol will start to flash on the screen to indicate prolonged air recirculation. If air recirculation is not switched off, the symbol will continue to flash for about 5 minutes.

Blower selection

Climatronic automatically regulates blower speed according to the interior temperature.

It is possible, however, to set the blower speed to suit requirements.

- Turn control (10) ››› Fig. 171 counter-clockwise (to lower the speed) or clockwise (to increase the speed).

Climatronic will switch off when the blower switches off.

⚠ WARNING

Read and observe the safety warnings ››› ⚠ in General notes on page 142.

Windscreen defrost

Switching on windscreen defrosting

- Press the button [MAX] (12) ››› Fig. 171.

Switching off windscreen defrosting

- Press button [MAX] (12) ››› Fig. 171 several times or press the [AUTO] button.

The temperature is regulated automatically. The air output is increased from vents **1** ››› page 143 and **2**.

Driving

Starting and stopping the engine

Introduction

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 18

⚠ WARNING

- **When moving with the engine switched off, the ignition key must always remain in position (2) ››› Fig. 172 ››› page 151 (ignition on). The control lamps will light up in this position. Otherwise, the steering lock could engage suddenly. Risk of accident!**
- **Do not remove the key from the ignition until the vehicle has come to a standstill and is secure (e.g. the handbrake is engaged). Otherwise, the steering lock could suddenly engage. Risk of accident!**
- **Always take the ignition key with you when you leave the vehicle. This is particularly important if you leave children in the vehicle. Children could, for example, start the engine with the subsequent risk of accident.**
- **Never leave the engine running in unventilated or closed rooms. The exhaust gases contain carbon monoxide, an odourless and colourless poisonous gas. Risk of fatal accidents! Carbon monoxide can cause people to lose consciousness and can cause death.**
- **Never leave the vehicle unattended if the engine is running.**
- **Never switch the engine off until the vehicle has come to a complete stop. Risk of accident!**

ⓘ CAUTION

- **Turning the steering wheel fully in either direction when the vehicle is stationary and the engine is in gear puts the power steering under great stress. This could lead to noise. Never leave the steering wheel turned fully in either direction for more than 15 seconds. Risk of damage to the power steering system!**
- **The starter motor may only be used (key position (3) ››› Fig. 172 ››› page 151 in the ignition) if the engine is off. Using the starter motor when the engine is running could damage it.**
- **Immediately release the ignition key when the engine starts, otherwise damage could be caused to the starter motor.**
- **When the engine is cold, you should avoid high engine speeds, driving at full throttle and over-loading the engine before it reaches operating temperature. Risk of engine damage!**
- **Do not tow-start the engine. Risk of engine damage! In vehicles with a catalytic converter, fuel that has not been burned could reach the catalytic converter and catch fire in it. This would lead to a fault in the catalytic converter. You may use the battery from another** »

vehicle to help you start your engine **››› page 51.**

- **After prolonged and demanding operation of the engine, when the journey has ended, do not stop the engine immediately. Let the engine run at idle for about one more minute. This will stop the engine from overheating.**

For the sake of the environment

Do not warm up the engine when the vehicle is stationary. If possible, move off immediately after starting the engine. This will help the engine reach operating temperature more quickly, reducing the quantity of emissions.

Note

- **The engine can only be started with the original SEAT key.**
- **Loud running noises may be heard briefly after cold-starting the engine. This is normal and is no cause for concern.**
- **After the engine has been stopped and the ignition switched off, the radiator fan may continue running for around 10 minutes.**
- **If the engine still does not start after a second attempt, the fuel pump fuse might have blown. Check it and replace if necessary** **››› page 80** **or contact your Specialised Service.**
- **You should always engage the steering lock when you exit the vehicle. This will hinder any attempts at theft.**

Power steering

The power steering allows you to turn the steering wheel more easily.

If the power steering fails or the engine is off (towing), it is still possible to turn the vehicle's steering wheel fully. However, you need more strength to steer the vehicle.

Driver warning lamps and messages

`(in red) Faulty steering! To park the vehicle`

If the warning lamp remains on and the driver indication appears, the power steering could be faulty.

Do **not** continue driving. Seek specialist assistance.

`(in yellow) Steering: System fault! You may continue driving.`

If the warning lamp comes on, the steering could react with more difficultly or more sensitivity than normal. In addition, when driving in a straight line the steering wheel may be off-centre.

Drive slowly to a specialised workshop and have the fault repaired.

`(in yellow) Steering lock: fault! Go to an Official Service`

The electronic steering lock is malfunctioning.

Go to a specialised workshop as soon as possible and have the fault repaired.

WARNING

Take it immediately to a specialised workshop and have the fault repaired: risk of accident!

Note

If the lamp (in red) or else (in yellow) lights up briefly, you may continue driving.

Start-up lock security system (immobiliser)

There is an electronic chip in the key. The electronic immobiliser is deactivated when the key is inserted into the ignition. The electronic immobiliser is automatically activated when the key is removed from the ignition.

The engine will not start if an unauthorised key is used.

The informative display indicates:

`Immobiliser active!`

Ignition lock

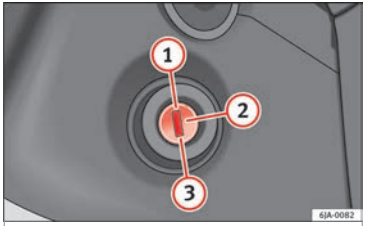


Fig. 172 Ignition key positions.

Petrol engines

(1) – Ignition switched off, engine stopped, steering can be locked

(2) – Ignition switched on

(3) – Starting

Diesel engines

(1) – Fuel supply stopped, ignition switched off, engine stopped, steering can be locked

(2) – Engine pre-heating, ignition switched on

(3) – Starting

To engage the **Steering lock** without the key in the ignition, turn the steering wheel slightly until you hear it engage.

If the **steering lock is engaged** and it is difficult or impossible to turn the key to position (2), release the lock by turning the steering wheel slightly in both directions.

Starter button

Fig. 173 In the steering column: start-up push button for the Keyless Access lock and start-up system. The layout in right-hand drive vehicles is symmetrical.

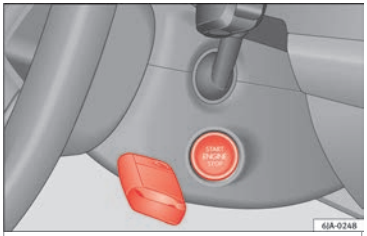


Fig. 174 Emergency ignition in vehicles with Keyless Access.

The start-up button may only be used if there is a valid key in the vehicle.

Opening the driver's door **when exiting the vehicle** activates the electronic lock on the steering column if the ignition is disabled.

Switching the ignition on/off

- Briefly push the start-up button ››› **Fig. 173** without touching the brake or clutch pedal ››› ⚠.

Emergency starting function

If no valid key is detected inside the vehicle, an emergency start-up will be required. The relevant message will appear in the dash panel display. This may happen when, for example, the vehicle key battery is very low or flat: »

- Immediately after pushing the start-up button, keep the vehicle key next to the steering column ››› Fig. 174.
- The ignition connects and the engine starts automatically.

Emergency disconnection

If the engine does not stop after briefly pressing the start-up button, an emergency disconnect will be required:

- Press the starter button twice within 1 second or press it once for more than 2 seconds ››› ⚠.
- The engine turns off automatically.

Engine restart feature

If no valid key is detected inside the vehicle after the engine stops, you will only have 5 seconds to restart it. A warning will display on the dash panel screen.

After this interval, it will not be possible to start the engine without a valid key inside the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

Any accidental movement of the vehicle could result in serious injury.

- **When pressing the start-up button, do *not* press the brake or clutch pedal, this way the engine will start immediately.**

⚠ WARNING

If vehicle keys are used negligently or without due care, this may cause accidents and serious injury.

- **Never leave any key inside the vehicle when exiting. Otherwise, a child or unauthorised person could lock the vehicle, start the engine or connect the ignition and, in this way, operate electronic equipment (e.g. the windows).**

Note

In diesel vehicles with the Keyless Access system, there may be a delay in the engine starting if it requires preheating.

Starting the engine

Vehicles with a **diesel engine** are equipped with a glow plug system. When you switch on the ignition, the glow plug warning lamp ➿ will light up. The engine can be started straight away when the lamp switches off.

Do not connect electrical appliances during preheating so as not the drain the vehicle battery unnecessarily.

Starting the engine

- Move the gearbox lever into neutral or move the selector lever to position **P** or **N** and pull firmly on the handbrake.
- Press the clutch pedal all the way down and start the engine (3) ››› Fig. 172 ››› page 151, without pressing the accelerator. Keep the clutch pedal pressed down until the engine starts.
- Release the ignition key as soon as the engine starts. The key returns to position (2).
- If the engine does not start after 10 seconds, turn the key back to position (1). Repeat the action after 30 seconds.
- Release the handbrake before moving off.

Switching off the engine with the key

Stop the engine by turning the ignition key to position (1) ››› Fig. 172 ››› page 151.

Brakes and brake servo systems

Introduction

⚠ WARNING

- **The brake servo only works when the engine is running. Braking when the engine is switched off requires applying more strength to the brake pedal. Risk of accident!**
- **Press down on the clutch pedal when stopping and braking with a manual gearbox,**

petrol engine vehicle at low speed. Otherwise, the brake servo might not work properly. Risk of accident!

- In the event of damage to the standard front spoiler or where a different front spoiler, wheel trims, etc. are subsequently fitted, make sure the air vent to the brakes on the front wheels is not blocked. Otherwise, braking operations may be impaired. Risk of accident!
- Always fully release the handbrake. If it is only partially released, this will cause overheating of the rear brakes, which can impair the function of the brake system. Risk of accident!
- Never leave children unsupervised in the vehicle. They could release the handbrake or move the gear lever. The vehicle could start moving. Risk of accident!
- Insufficient fuel can cause the engine to run irregularly or to switch off. Brake assist systems could be impaired. Risk of accident!
- Always adjust your driving style to suit visibility, the weather and road and traffic conditions. The best vehicle safety offered by brake assist systems must never encourage you to run greater risks. Risk of accident!

CAUTION

- Observe the information concerning new brake pads ››› page 161.
- Where braking is not necessary, do not wear down the brake pads by pressing down gently on the brake pedal. This causes the brakes to overheat, increasing their wear and increasing braking distances.
- To ensure the brake assist systems work properly, all wheels must be fitted with tyres approved by the manufacturer.

Note

- If you brake suddenly and the brake system control unit regards the situation as hazardous for the drivers behind you, the brake lights will begin to flash automatically. After reducing speed to approximately 10 km/h (6 mph) or stopping the vehicle, the brake lights will stop flashing and the hazard warning lights will switch on. The hazard warning lights are automatically switched off when you accelerate or restart the vehicle.
- On long, steep gradients, reduce your speed and change to a lower gear (manual gearbox) or move the selector lever to a lower gear position (automatic gearbox). This uses the force of the engine and the brakes do not suffer as much. If you still have to brake, do so intermittently, pressing down repeatedly on the brake pedal.
- Vehicle modifications (e.g. to the engine, brakes, frame or a combination of wheels and tyres) could impair the brake assist systems ››› page 192, Accessories and modifications to the vehicle.
- In the event of a fault in the ABS system, the ESC, TCS and EDL are switched off automatically. A fault in the ABS is indicated by the ››› page 155 warning lamp.

Control lamp

The warning lamp illuminates if the brake fluid level is too low or if there is a fault in the ABS system.

The informative display indicates:

`Brake fluid Instruction Manual!`

Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine and check the level of the brake fluid ››› page 209

WARNING

- The following indications must be taken into account when opening the engine compartment to check the brake fluid ››› page 202, Engine compartment.
- If the warning lamp illuminates together with the warning lamp ››› page 155, , stop the vehicle! Go to a technical service.
- A fault in the brake system or in the Anti-lock brake system (ABS) can lead to longer braking distances – Risk of accident!

Brakes

Wear

The rate of wear of the brake pads depends on the driving style and on the way in which the vehicle is used. The brake pads will wear more quickly if you use your vehicle frequently in urban traffic and short trips or drive in a sporty style. Under these **demanding conditions**, visit your specialised service, even before the scheduled service date, so that the thickness of the brake pads can be measured.

Wet roads or road salt

If brakes are wet or frozen, or if you are driving on roads which have been gritted with salt, braking power may set in later than normal. Dry the brakes as soon as possible by braking repeatedly.

Corrosion

Long periods of inactivity and little use can lead to rust on the brake discs and dirt on the brake pads. Where the brake system is subjected to light stress or in the case of corrosion, clean the brake discs by braking fully several times at a high speed.

Brake system fault

If you notice that the braking distance suddenly increases and the brake pedal can be pressed down more fully, there may be a fault in the brake system. Visit a specialised service immediately and adjust your driving style to the extent of the damage and to limit the effect of the brakes.

Low brake fluid level

Insufficient brake fluid could cause faults in the brake system. The brake fluid level is controlled electronically ››› page 153, Control lamp.

Brake servo

The brake servo supplements the pressure you exert on the brake pedal. The brake servo only works when the engine is running.

Handbrake

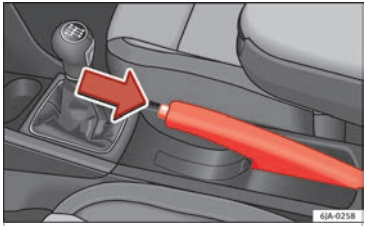


Fig. 175 Centre console: handbrake.

Applying the handbrake

– Pull the handbrake lever up all the way.

Releasing the handbrake

– Pull the handbrake lever up slightly and press the unlock button **at the same time** ››› Fig. 175.

– Keep the button pressed down and push the lever all the way down.

Control lamp

The warning lamp lights up when the handbrake is applied with the ignition on (P).

Additionally, driving the vehicle at speeds exceeding 6 km/h (4 mph) for at least 3 seconds produces an audible warning.

The informative display indicates:

`Release the handbrake!`

Braking and stability systems

Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

The ESC system increases control of the vehicle in emergency situations, e.g. during a sudden change in direction. Depending on the driving conditions, it reduces the risk of skidding and increases driving stability.

The system uses the steering wheel angle and road speed to calculate the changes of direction desired by the driver, and constantly compares them with the actual behaviour of the vehicle. When irregularities occur, for

example, if the vehicle begins to skid, the ESC brakes the appropriate wheel automatically.

The warning lamp on the general instrument panel starts flashing when the system is working.

The **stability (ESC)** system includes the following systems:

- Anti-lock brake system (ABS),
- Traction control system (TCS),
- Electronic differential lock (EDL),
- Hydraulic brake assist system (HBA),
- Hill hold control (HHC).

The ASR should be switched on at all times. Only under certain circumstances should the system be switched off, e.g.

- driving with chains,
- driving in deep snow or on very soft surfaces,
- During the “swinging movement” required to remove a stuck vehicle

Switch the ASR back on as soon as possible.

Brake assist system (HBA)*

The HBA system is activated when you press down on the brake pedal suddenly. It increases braking power, helping to reduce braking distances. To reduce braking distance as much as possible, keep the brake pedal pressed down firmly until the vehicle comes to a standstill.

With the help of this system, the ABS is activated more quickly and more efficiently.

The brake assist function is deactivated automatically when the brake pedal is released.

Hill hold control (HHC)*

The HHC system makes it easier to start the vehicle on hills. The system maintains the brake pressure created by pressing down on the brake pedal for 2 seconds after it has been released. Your foot can be removed from the brake pedal and you can use the accelerator pedal and move away on a hill without having to use the handbrake. The brake pressure drops as the accelerator pedal is pressed. If the vehicle cannot be started, it will start to move backwards after 2 seconds.

The HHC is activated on gradients of over 5%, if the driver door is closed. It only works for starting on hills, moving both forward and in reverse. It is not activated during start-up down hill.

Control lamp

If the control lamp flashes, the ESC is working.

If the warning lamp illuminates on ignition, the ESC system may have switched off due to technical reasons. Turn off the ignition and turn it on again. Upon switching on the ignition again, if the warning lamp has switched off, this means the ESC is functioning correctly again.

If the warning lamp is illuminated there is a fault in the ESC.

The informative display indicates:

Report No.: electronic stability control (ESC)

or

Report No.: Traction control system (ASR)

Go to a technical service.

Note

If the battery is disconnected and connected again, the yellow warning lamp lights up when the ignition is switched on. This warning lamp must switch off after covering a short distance.

Anti-lock brake system (ABS)

The ABS system prevents the wheels locking during braking. This helps the driver keep control of the vehicle.

The driver is made aware of ABS assistance **by the pulsating of the brake pedal** and a characteristic noise.

»

Keep the brake pedal pressed down while the ABS is working. The ABS will switch off when the brake pedal is released. Never brake intermittently while the ABS is working!

Control lamp

If the warning lamp is illuminated, there is a fault in the ABS.

The informative display indicates:

ABS fault

The brake system alone is operational in the vehicle, without ABS.

Go to a technical service.

WARNING

- **If the warning lamp illuminates together with the ››› page 153 warning lamp, , stop the vehicle! Go to a technical service.**
- **A fault in the Anti-lock brake system (ABS) can lead to longer braking distances – Risk of accident!**

Anti-slip regulation of the driving wheels (ASR)*

If the wheels start to slip, the TCS adapts the engine speed to the driving conditions. Particularly in unfavourable conditions, the TCS helps starting, accelerating and hill starts.

If the control lamp flashes, the ASR is working.

If the warning lamp illuminates on ignition, the TCS system may have switched off due to technical reasons. Turn off the ignition and turn it on again. Upon switching on the ignition again, if the warning lamp has switched off, this means the TCS is functioning correctly again.

If the warning lamp remains illuminated, there is a fault in the TCS.

The informative display indicates:

Report No.: Traction control system (ASR)

Go to a technical service.

Electronic differential lock

If one of the wheels starts to skid, the EDL brakes that wheel, transmitting the driving force to the other wheels. This increases vehicle stability and improves driving stability.

To prevent the disc brake of the braking wheel from overheating, the EDL cuts out automatically if subjected to excessive loads. The vehicle will continue to function normally without EDL. The EDL will switch on again automatically when the brake has cooled down.

Manual gearbox

Changing gears

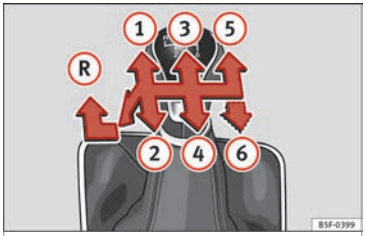


Fig. 176 Gear shift diagram of a 5- or 6-speed manual gearbox

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 34

When changing gear, always depress the clutch pedal fully and keep it pressed down to avoid excessive clutch wear.

In order to drive at an optimum RPM, follow the gear change indications ››› page 25.

Engage reverse gear only when the vehicle is stopped. On engaging reverse gear while the engine is running, first wait a moment with the clutch pedal pressed down fully to limit gear shift noise.

The reverse lights switch on when the reverse gear is selected and the ignition is on.

⚠ WARNING

Never engage reverse gear when moving forward. Risk of accident!

Note

Do not rest your hand on the gear lever while driving. The pressure of your hand could lead to premature wear of the gear system.

Automatic gearbox

Basic information

The gearbox changes up and down automatically. The gearbox can be set to **Tiptronic** mode. The gears can be changed manually in this mode ››› page 159.

The engine can only be **started** in positions **P** or **N**. If, on engaging the steering lock, switching the ignition on/off or starting the engine, the selector lever is not in these positions, the informative display will show **Move the selector lever to position P/N!**, or → **P/N** is shown on the general dash panel display.

At temperatures below -10°C (14°F), the engine can only be started in position **P**.

Move the selector lever to position **P** when parking the vehicle on a flat surface. On a slope, the handbrake should be firmly applied before moving the selector lever to the park position. This reduces the load on the lock mechanism while making it easier to move the selector lever from position **P**.

If, while the vehicle is moving, the selector lever is accidentally moved to position **N**, release the accelerator and wait for the engine to idle before moving it back into position.

⚠ WARNING

- **Never press the accelerator when selecting the automatic gearbox operating mode when the vehicle is stationary. Risk of accident!**
- **Never move the selector lever to positions R or P when driving. Risk of accident!**
- **If the vehicle is to be stopped with a gear selected and the engine idling (e.g. waiting or moving slowly at traffic lights), press down on the brake pedal because the transmission is not entirely interrupted when the engine is idling and the vehicle will tend to start moving.**
- **Apply the handbrake firmly and put the selector lever in position P before opening the bonnet and working on the vehicle with the engine running. Risk of accident! Strictly follow the safety instructions** **››› page 202, Engine compartment****.**
- **When stopping on a slope (hill), try not to stop the vehicle from moving by pressing the "accelerator" with a gear selected. This could overheat the clutch. If the clutch risks being burnt due to this force, it would switch off and the vehicle could move backwards. Risk of accident!**
- **If you have to stop on a hill, press down on the brake pedal to stop the vehicle from moving.**
- **The drive wheels could lose traction on a slippery road surface when the kick-down function is activated. Risk of sliding!**

CAUTION

- **In DSG automatic gearboxes, the double clutch is protected from overloads. If the hill hold control is used, the clutches are subjected to greater force if the vehicle is at a standstill on a slope or suddenly accelerating on a slope.**
- **Should the clutches overheat, the ⓘ symbol is shown on the informative display with a warning message `Gear overheated. Stop! Instruction Manual!` An audible warning is also heard. Stop the vehicle in this case, stop the engine and wait until the symbol ⓘ has switched off. Danger of damage to the gearbox! You can continue driving once the symbol is switched off.**

Starting and driving

Starting

– Press and hold the brake pedal.

– Press and hold the interlock button on the selector lever knob and move the selector »

lever to position ››› page 158 before releasing the interlock button.

– Release the brake and press the accelerator.

Stopping

– The selector lever does not have to be moved to position **N** if the vehicle is stopped for a short period, e.g. at intersections. Applying the brake is enough. However, the engine must remain idling.

Parking

– Press the brake pedal.

– Apply the handbrake.

– Press the interlock button, move the selector lever to position **P** and release the button.

Kick-down feature

The kick-down feature allows maximum acceleration to be reached.

In any gear programme, press down fully on the accelerator for the automatic gearbox to activate the kick-down feature. This function takes priority over the gear programmes without taking into account the position of the selector lever (**D**, **S** or **Tiptronic**) and is used to reach maximum acceleration, using full engine power. Depending on the road speed and engine speed, the automatic gearbox shifts down and the vehicle accelerates. It only shifts up after the maximum engine speed has been reached.

Selector lever positions

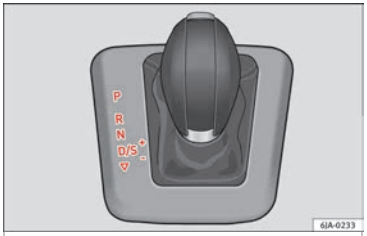


Fig. 177 Gear selector lever

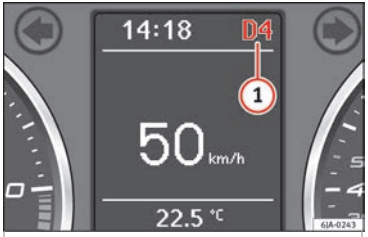


Fig. 178 Informative display: selector lever positions.

Read the additional information carefully
››› page 35

The current position of the selector lever is shown on the general instrument panel display (1) ››› Fig. 178.

(P) – Parking position

In this position, the driven wheels are mechanically locked.

The parking position can only be selected when the vehicle is stationary.

If you want to move the selector lever from this position, press the interlock button on the selector lever knob while pressing down on the brake pedal.

If the battery is drained, the selector lever cannot be moved from position **P**.

(R) – Reverse gear

Reverse gear must be engaged only when the vehicle is stationary and the engine is idling.

To move the selector lever to position **R** from positions **P** or **N**, press the interlock button on the selector lever knob and press down on the brake pedal.

The reverse lights come on when the selector lever is in position **R** and the ignition is on.

(N) – Neutral (idling)

Neutral (idling) is engaged in this position.

To move the selector lever from position **N** (if the lever has remained in this position for

more than 2 seconds) to position **D** or **R** at speeds of less than 5 km/h (3 mph) and when the vehicle is stationary, press down on the brake pedal.

(D) – Drive (forwards)

In this position, the gearbox automatically changes to a lower or higher gear, depending on engine requirements, the driving speed and the gear shift programme.

To move the selector lever to position **D** from position **N** at speeds of less than 5 km/h (3 mph) and when the vehicle is stationary, press down on the brake pedal.

In some situations (e.g. on mountain roads or when towing a trailer or caravan), it can be advantageous to switch temporarily to the manual shift programme ››› page 159 so that the gear ratios can be selected manually to suit driving conditions.

(S) – Sports driving position

Shifting up later than usual makes full use of the engine power. This shifts down earlier in relation to position **D**.

To move the selector lever to position **S** from position **D**, press the interlock button on the selector lever knob.

Tiptronic

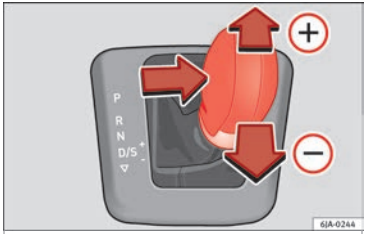


Fig. 179 Selector lever: Tiptronic.

The Tiptronic gearbox allows the driver to change gears manually using the selector lever.

Activating the manual gearbox

– From position **D**, push the selector lever to the right. The selected position of the selector lever is shown on the general instrument panel display together with the gear engaged (1) ››› Fig. 178.

Shifting up

– Push the selector lever gently forwards (+) ››› Fig. 179.

Shifting down

– Push the selector lever gently backwards (-) ››› Fig. 179.

The manual gearbox can be activated when the vehicle is either moving or stationary.

When accelerating, the gearbox automatically shifts up shortly before the maximum engine speed is reached.

On shifting up, the gear is only engaged when there is no risk of engine damage.

When the accelerator pedal is pressed down to the kick-down zone, the gearbox will shift down in line with the road speed and engine speed.

Note

The kick-down function is also available in manual shift mode.

Selector lever lock

Automatic selector lever lock

The selector lever is locked in the positions **P** and **N** when the ignition is on. Press down on the brake to unlock it. Remember, if the selector lever is in positions **P** and **N**, the warning lamp will light up on the general instrument panel.

When the selector lever merely moves through position **N** (e.g. when moved from **R** to **D**), the lever lock is not applied. This makes it possible, for example, to rock a stuck vehicle backwards and forwards. The »

lock is only applied if the brake is not pressed and the selector lever is moved to position **N** for more than 2 seconds.

The selector lever only locks when the is vehicle stationary or driving at a speed lower than 5 km/h (3 mph). At a higher speed, it automatically disconnects in the **N** position.

Interlock button

The interlock button on the selector lever knob prevents the driver from inadvertently engaging a gear. Press the button to unlock the selector lever.

Safety interlock for ignition key[1)]

After switching off the ignition, you can only remove the ignition key if the selector lever is in position **P**. When the ignition key is removed, the selector lever is locked in position **P**.

Driving programmes

Your vehicle is equipped with an electronically-controlled automatic gearbox. Shifting up or down depends on the programme selected.

For a **calm driving style**, the gearbox uses the most economic programme. The gearbox shifts up as quickly as possible and shifts down as late as possible, thus increasing driving economy.

With a **sporty driving style**, characterised by sudden acceleration, heavy acceleration, speeds that often increase and decrease and maximum speed, the gearbox adapts to this driving style when the accelerator is pressed down fully (kick-down) by shifting down as quickly as possible and can even shift down by several gears at once.

Selecting the best driving programmes is an endless job. Regardless of this, the driver can also make the gearbox switch to a more dynamic gear shift programme by pressing the accelerator quickly. This makes the automatic gearbox shift down into a lower gear than the one that would normally apply to the current speed, allowing for more rapid acceleration (e.g. to overtake another vehicle) without having to press the accelerator until the kick-down position. On shifting up in a corresponding driving style, the gearbox returns to the original programme.

When driving along mountain roads, the gearbox adapts to the gradients. This avoids having to frequently change gears when driving uphill. In Tiptronic mode, it is possible to shift down manually when driving downhill to use the braking effect of the engine.

Backup programme

A back-up programme exists in case of faults.

In the event of a fault in the gearbox electronics, it will continue to work in one of the corresponding back-up programmes. All segments of the screen are lit up or switched off.

The fault can be seen as follows:

- The gearbox only engages certain gears
- Reverse gear **R** cannot be engaged
- The manual gearbox switches off in the back-up programme

Note

If the gearbox switches to the back-up programme, visit an Authorised Service as soon as possible to solve the problem.

Gearbox malfunctions

Gearbox: Fault! Stop the vehicle and place the lever in the position P.

There is a fault in the gearbox. Stop the vehicle in a safe place and do not continue driving. Seek specialist assistance.

[1)] Valid only for certain countries.

Gearbox: System fault! You may continue driving.

Have the fault corrected by a specialised workshop without delay.

Gearbox: System fault! You can continue driving with restrictions. Reverse gear disabled

Take the vehicle to a specialised workshop and have the fault repaired without delay.

Gearbox: System fault! You can continue driving in D until switching off the engine

Stop the vehicle in a safe place well away from moving traffic. Seek specialist assistance.

Gearbox: too hot. Adapt your driving accordingly

Continue driving at moderate speeds. When the warning lamp switches off, you can continue driving in a normal manner.

Gearbox: press the brake and engage a gear again.

If the fault was caused by a gearbox with a high temperature, this driver message will be displayed when the gearbox has cooled again.

Run-in and economical driving

The first 1,500 km

Over the first 1,500 kilometres the engine must be run in.

Up to 1000 kilometres

– Do not drive at more than 3/4 of the maximum speed corresponding to the engaged gear, i.e. up to 3/4 of the maximum permitted engine speed.

– Do not drive at full speed.

– Avoid high engine speeds.

– Do not tow a trailer.

From 1000 to 1500 kilometres (600 to 900 miles)

– **Slowly** increase the engine speed until reaching the maximum permitted speed of the engaged gear, i.e. the maximum permitted engine speed.

During its first few hours of running, the internal friction in the engine is greater than later on, when all the moving parts have bedded in. How the vehicle is driven over approximately the first 1,500 kilometres (900 miles), determines the success of the process of running in the engine.

Even after running in, the vehicle should not be unnecessarily driven at **high engine speeds**. The maximum permitted engine speed is marked at the start of the red zone on the rev counter dial. The gear must be changed up when the red area is reached in vehicles with a manual gearbox. **Extremely** high engine speeds when accelerating are automatically limited, however the engine is not protected against high engine speeds produced by incorrectly changing to a lower gear, which could cause the engine to run at revs above the maximum permitted amount, and consequently result in damage to the engine.

Additionally, vehicles with a manual gearbox must also bear the following in mind: do not drive with the engine speed too **low**. Change down to a lower gear when the engine no longer runs smoothly. Observe the recommendations for changing gear ››› page 25.

New tyres

New tyres must be submitted to “running in”, given that initially their grip is not yet at the maximum level. During the first 500 km (120 miles) drive very carefully.

New brake pads

New brake pads do not yet provide maximum friction capacity. First they must be “run in”. »

During the first 200 km (120 miles) drive very carefully.

CAUTION

All the information for speed and engine speed refers to an engine that operates at operating temperature. Do not run the engine at high engine speeds, neither when stopped or while driving.

For the sake of the environment

Do not drive at unnecessarily high engine speeds; changing to a higher gear sooner contributes to saving fuel, reduces operating noise and protects the environment.

Environmental compatibility

Environmental protection is a top priority in the design, choice of materials and manufacture of your new SEAT.

Constructive measures to encourage recycling

- Joints and connections designed for easy dismantling
- Modular construction to facilitate dismantling
- Increased use of single-grade materials.
- Plastic parts and elastomers are marked in accordance with ISO 1043, ISO 11469 and ISO 1629.

Choice of materials

- Use of recycled materials.
- Use of compatible plastics in the same part if its components are not easily separated.
- Use of recycled materials and/or materials originating from renewable sources.
- Reduction of volatile components, including odour, in plastic materials.
- Use of CFC-free coolants.

Ban on heavy metals, with the exceptions dictated by law (Annex II of ELV Directive 2000/53/EC): cadmium, lead, mercury, hexavalent chromium.

Manufacturing methods

- Reduction of the quantity of thinner in the protective wax for cavities.
- Use of plastic film as protection during vehicle transport.
- Use of solvent-free adhesives.
- Use of CFC-free coolants in cooling systems.
- Recycling and energy recovery from residues (RDF).
- Improvement in the quality of waste water.
- Use of systems for the recovery of residual heat (thermal recovery, enthalpy wheels, etc.).
- The use of water-soluble paints.

Economical and environmentally-friendly driving

Fuel consumption, environmental pollution and wear to the engine, brakes and tyres depends in large part on your driving style. By adopting an economical driving style and anticipating the traffic situation ahead, you can easily reduce fuel consumption by 10-15%. Some tips on how to help you reduce pollution while saving money are listed below.

Drive anticipating the traffic situation

A vehicle uses most fuel when accelerating. When you anticipate situations, you have to brake less often and, thus, accelerate less. If it is possible, let the vehicle roll with a **gear engaged**, for example, if you see a red light ahead. The braking effect achieved in this way helps to reduce the wear of brakes and tyres; emissions and fuel consumption are reduced to zero (disconnection due to inertia).

Change gear early to save energy

An effective way of saving fuel is to change up *quickly* through the gears. Running the

engine at high rpm in the lower gears uses an unnecessary amount of fuel.

Manual gearbox: shift up from first to second gear as soon as possible. We recommend that, whenever possible, you change to a higher gear upon reaching 2000 rpm. Follow the "recommended gear" indication that appears on the instrument panel
››› page 25.

Avoid driving at high speed

We advise you not to drive at the top speed permitted by the vehicle. Fuel consumption, exhaust emissions and noise levels all increase very rapidly at higher speeds. Driving at moderate speeds will help to save fuel.

Avoid idling

It is worthwhile switching off the engine when waiting in a traffic jam, at level crossings or at traffic lights with a long red phase. The fuel saved after only 30 - 40 seconds is greater than the amount of fuel needed to restart the engine.

The engine takes a long time to warm up when it is idling. Mechanical wear and pollutant emissions are also especially high during this initial warm-up phase. It is therefore best to drive off immediately after starting the engine. Avoid running the engine at high speed.

Periodic maintenance

Periodic maintenance work guarantees that, before beginning a journey, you will not consume more than the required amount of fuel. A well-serviced engine gives you the benefit of **improved fuel efficiency** as well as maximum reliability and an enhanced resale value.

A badly serviced engine can consume up to 10% more fuel than necessary.

Avoid short journeys

To reduce the consumption and emission of polluting exhaust gases, the engine and the exhaust gas filtration systems should reach the optimum **operating temperature**.

With the engine cold, fuel consumption is proportionally higher. The engine does not warm up and fuel consumption does not normalise until having driven approximately *four* kilometres (2.5 miles). This is why we recommend avoiding short trips whenever possible.

Maintain the correct tyre pressures

Bear in mind that keeping the tyres at an adequate pressure saves fuel. If the tyre pressure is just one bar (14.5 psi/100 kPa) too low, fuel consumption can increase by as much as 5%. Due to the greater rolling resistance, under-inflation also increases tyre **wear** wear and impairs handling.

The tyre pressures should always be checked when the tyres are *cold*.

Do not use **winter tyres** all year round as they increase fuel consumption by up to 10%.

Avoid unnecessary weight

Given that every kilo of **extra weight** will increase the fuel consumption, it is advisable to always check the luggage compartment to make sure that no unnecessary loads are being transported.

A roof rack is often left in place for the sake of convenience, even when it is no longer needed. At a speed of 100 km/h (62 mph) and 120 km/h (75 mph) your vehicle will use about 12% more fuel as a result of the extra wind resistance caused by the roof rack even when it is not in use.

Save electricity

The engine activates the alternator, which produces electricity. With the need for electricity, fuel consumption also increases. Because of this, always turn off electrical devices when you do not need them. Examples of devices that use a lot of electricity are: the fan at high speeds, the rear window heating and the seat heaters*.

Note

- **If you vehicle has *Start-Stop*, it is not recommended to switch this function off.**

»

- **It is recommended that you *close the windows* when driving at more than 60 km/h (37 mph)**
- **Do not drive with your foot resting *on the clutch pedal,*, as the pressure can make the plate spin, more fuel will be used and it can burn the clutch plate lining, causing a serious fault.**
- **Do not hold the vehicle on a hill with the clutch, use the foot brake or hand brake, using the latter to start. The fuel consumption will be lower and you will prevent the clutch plate from being damaged.**
- **On descents, use the engine brake, changing to the gear that is more suitable for the slope. Fuel consumption will be "zero" and the brakes will not suffer.**

Engine management and exhaust gas purification system

Introduction

⚠ WARNING

- **Because of the high temperatures which can occur in the exhaust purification system (catalytic converter or diesel particulate filter), do not park the vehicle where the exhaust can come into contact with flammable materials under the car (e.g. on grass or at the forest edge). Fire hazard!**
- **Do not apply wax underneath the vehicle around the area of the exhaust system: Fire hazard!**

Note

While the control lamps , , EPC or remain lit, there may be engine problems, fuel consumption may increase and the engine may lose power.

Catalytic converter

An exhaust gas emission control system (catalytic converter) that functions perfectly is vitally important for vehicle operation that respects the environment.

Please observe the following indications:

- Refuel only using unleaded petrol in petrol engine vehicles ›› **page 200**.
- Do not add too much oil to the engine ›› **page 207, Checking engine oil level**.
- Do not switch off the ignition while driving.

If you are required to drive in a country where unleaded fuel is not available, when returning to a country where using a catalytic converter is obligatory, the catalytic converter must be replaced.

CAUTION

- **Never completely empty the tank! An irregular fuel supply can cause ignition faults, which can result in damage to a substantial amount of engine parts and the exhaust system.**
- **Refuelling just once with leaded petrol disables the exhaust system!**

Particulate filter (diesel engines)

The diesel engine particulate filter eliminates most of the soot from the exhaust gas system. Under normal driving conditions, the filter cleans itself. The diesel particulate filter is cleaned automatically without need for indication by the warning lamp . This may be noticed because the engine idle speed increases and an odour may be detected.

If automatic filter purification cannot be carried out (because only short trips are taken, for example), soot will accumulate on the filter and the Diesel particulate filter warning lamp will switch on.

Facilitate the automatic filter cleaning process by driving in the following manner: drive for approximately 15 minutes at a minimum speed of 60 km/h (37 mph) in 4th or 5th gear (automatic gearbox: gear S). Maintain the engine speed at approximately 2,000 rpm. The

rise in temperature causes the soot on the filter to burn. On completion of the cleaning the warning lamp will switch off.

If the lamp does not turn off, or the three lamps turn on (particulate filter , fault in the emission control system and glow plugs), drive the vehicle to a specialised workshop and have the fault repaired at the earliest opportunity.

WARNING

- **Always drive according to the road weather conditions, the terrain and traffic.**
- **The particulate filter attains very high temperatures. Therefore, do not park the vehicle in places where the exhaust pipe could come into contact with dry grass or with highly-flammable materials. Risk of fire!**

CAUTION

While the warning lamp is lit up, the fuel consumption is high, and in certain conditions, the engine power is reduced.

Note

- **In order for the particulate filter to burn off soot in a correct manner, avoid carrying out frequent short journeys.**
- **Using diesel fuel with a high sulphur count can considerably reduce the useful life of the particulate filter. The specialised service provides information about the countries where fuel with a high sulphur content is used.**

Engine management* EPC

This warning lamp monitors the engine management system for petrol engines.

The warning lamp **EPC** (Electronic Power Control) lights up when the ignition is switched on while system operation is being verified. It should go out once the engine is started.

If there is a fault in the electronic engine management system while you are driving, this warning lamp will light up. Take the vehicle to a specialised workshop as soon as possible and have the engine checked.

Emission control system*

Control lamp flashes:

When there is misfiring that can damage the catalytic converter. Reduce speed and drive carefully to the nearest specialised workshop to have the engine checked.

The control lamp lights up:

If a fault has developed during driving which has reduced the quality of the exhaust gas (e.g. lambda probe fault). Reduce speed and drive carefully to the nearest specialised workshop to have the engine checked.

Engine pre-heating/fault system*

The warning lamp lights up to show that the glow plugs are preheating the diesel engine.

The control lamp lights up

If the control lamp lights up when the engine is started it means that the glow plugs are preheating. The engine can be started straight away when the lamp switches off.

Control lamp flashes

If a fault develops in the engine management system while you are driving, the glow plug system lamp will flash . Take the vehicle to a specialised workshop as soon as possible and have the engine checked.

Driving tips

Driving through flooded roads

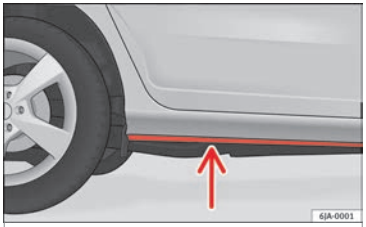


Fig. 180 Driving through water.

To prevent the vehicle from being damaged when driving through water (i.e. flooded roads), please observe the following:

- Determine the depth of the water before entering. Water can reach a maximum height of below the door sill ››› **Fig. 180**.
- Drive at a maximum pace of walking speed. Driving at a higher speed can cause a wave in front of the vehicle, which can cause water to enter the engine air intake system or other parts of the vehicle.
- Never stop in the water, never reverse and never stop the engine.
- Before driving through water deactivate the Start-Stop system ››› **page 181**.

⚠ WARNING

- **Driving through water, dirt and mud can reduce braking capability and prolong the braking distance – Risk of accident!**
- **Do not carry out any sudden or strong braking manoeuvres after driving through water.**
- **Clean and dry the brakes as soon as possible after driving through water by breaking intermittently. Carry out braking in order to dry the brakes and clean the brake discs only if traffic so permits. Do not put other drivers at risk.**

CAUTION

- **In the event of driving through water, parts of the vehicle can be seriously damaged, such as the engine, gearbox, catalytic converter, suspension or the electrical system.**
- **Oncoming vehicles that drive through water can cause waves that exceed your vehicle's permitted level for driving through water.**
- **There may be pot-holes mud or rocks under the water that can hinder or prevent driving through water.**
- **Do not drive through salt water. The salt can cause rust. All components that are exposed to salt water must be rinsed immediately with fresh water.**

Note

After driving through water we recommend that you contact a specialised service for an inspection.

Preventing damage to the vehicle

In order to prevent damage to the vehicle, take special care:

- on roads that are in poor condition,
- when mounting kerbs,
- when approaching very steep ramps, etc.,
- with the parts of the vehicle situated on the lower part of the vehicle, i.e. the spoiler, the exhaust pipe.

This applies especially to vehicles with a very low suspension (sport) and when the vehicle is fully loaded.

Driver assistance systems

Parking aid

General information

Various systems are available to help you when parking or manoeuvring in tight spaces, depending on the equipment fitted on your vehicle.

The **rear parking aid** is an audible assistant that warns about obstacles located *behind* the vehicle ››› page 168.

During parking, **Parking System Plus** assists the driver by visually and audibly warning them about obstacles detected *in front* and *behind* the vehicle ››› page 168.

⚠ WARNING

- **Always pay attention, also when looking straight ahead, to traffic and the vehicle surroundings. The assistance systems are not a replacement for driver awareness. When inserting or removing the vehicle from a parking space, or when performing similar manoeuvres the driver always assumes the responsibility.**
- **Adapt your speed and driving style at all times to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.**
- **The ultrasound sensors have blind spots in which obstacles and people are not registered. Pay special attention to children and animals.**
- **Always keep visual control of the vehicle surroundings: use the mirrors for additional help.**

ⓘ CAUTION

Parking Aid functions may be negatively affected by different factors that may lead to damage to the vehicle or its immediate surrounds:

- **Under certain circumstances, the system does not detect or display certain objects:**
  - **Objects such as chains, trailer draw bars, fences, posts and thin trees.**
  - **Objects that are located above the sensors, such as protrusions in a wall.**
  - **Objects with certain surfaces or structures, such as wire mesh fences or powder snow.**
- **Certain surfaces of objects and garments do not reflect the ultrasound sensors' signals. The system cannot detect, at least correctly, these objects or people wearing such clothes.**
- **Ultrasound sensor signals may be affected by external sound sources. In certain circumstances this may prevent them from detecting people or objects.**
- **Please note that low obstacles detected by the system may no longer be registered by the sensors as the car moves closer, so the system will not give any further warning. In certain circumstances, objects such as high kerbs that could damage the bottom of the vehicle are not detected either.**
- **If the first warning from the Parking Aid is ignored, the vehicle could suffer considerable damage.**
- **The knocks or damage on the radiator grille, bumper, wheel arch and vehicle underbody can adjust the orientation of the sensors. This can affect the parking aid function. Have the function checked by a specialised workshop.**

Note

- **In certain situations, the system can give a warning even though there is no obstacle in the detected area, e.g:**
  - **with rough or cobbled floors or ground with long grass;**
  - **with external ultrasound sources, such as cleaning vehicles or other vehicles;**
  - **In downpours, intense snow or dense exhaust gases;**
  - **if the registration plate (front or rear) is not properly affixed to the bumper surface;**
  - **or in locations such as the brow of a hill.**
- **In order to guarantee good system operation, keep the ultrasound sensors clean, free of snow or ice, and do not cover them with adhesives or other objects.**

»

- **If you use high-pressure or vapour equipment to clean the ultrasound sensors, apply it directly only very briefly and always from a distance of more than 10 cm.**
- **Retrofitting of accessories to the vehicle, such as a bicycle rack, may interfere with the operation of the Parking Aid.**
- **In order to familiarise yourself with the system, it is advised that you practice parking in an area or car park that is free from traffic. There must be good weather and light conditions.**
- **The volume and tone of the warnings can be modified, in addition to the indications** **››› page 171**.
- **In vehicles *without* a driver information system, these parameters can be modified in a SEAT Official Service or in a specialised workshop.**
- **Please observe information on towing a trailer** **››› page 171**.
- **The display on the Easy Connect screen shows a slight time delay.**

Rear parking aid*

The rear Parking Aid assists the driver in parking by means of audible warning sounds.

Description

There are sensors integrated in the rear bumper. When the sensors detect an obstacle, you are alerted by audible warnings.

Make particularly sure that the sensors are not covered by adhesives, residues and the like, as this could affect the system's operation. Cleaning instructions **››› page 195**.

The approximate measurement range of the rear sensors is:

side area	0.90 m
central area	1.60 m

As you approach the obstacle, the time interval between the audible warnings will be reduced. When you reach around 0.30 m the warning will be constant: Do not continue to move forward (or backward) **››› ⚠ in General information on page 167**, **››› ❗ in General information on page 167** !

If you maintain separation from the obstacle, the volume of the warning begins to reduce after four seconds (does not affect the tone of the constant warning).

Activating/Deactivating

When engaging reverse gear, the parking aid is automatically switched on. This is confirmed with a short warning.

On disengaging reverse gear, the Parking Aid system is disconnected immediately.

Parking system plus*

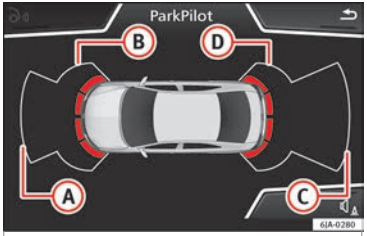


Fig. 181 Represented area.

Parking system plus assists you audibly and visually when parking.

There are sensors integrated in the front and rear bumpers. When they detect an obstacle, you are alerted by audible warnings and visually on the Easy Connect system.

In the event of danger of a frontal collision, the audible warnings come from the front of the vehicle, and in the event of the danger of a rear-end collision they come from the rear.

Make particularly sure that the sensors are not covered by adhesives, residues and the like, as this could affect the system's operation. Cleaning instructions **››› page 195**.

The approximate measurement range of the sensors is:

Ⓐ 1.20 m
Ⓑ 0.90 m
Ⓒ 1.60 m
Ⓓ 0.90 m

As you approach the obstacle, the time interval between the audible warnings will be reduced. When you reach around 0.30 m the warning will be constant: do not continue to move forward (or backward)!

If you maintain separation from the obstacle, the volume of the warning begins to reduce after four seconds (does not affect the tone of the constant warning).

Parking Aid Operation

Fig. 182 Centre console: parking aid button.

Manual connection of Parking Aid

- Press the P button *once*.

Manual disconnection of Parking Aid

- Press the P button *again*.

Manual disconnection of Parking Aid display (the audible sounds remain active)

- Press a button on the main menu of the factory-assembled infotainment system.
- **OR**: press the **BACK** function button.

Automatic connection of Parking Aid

- Engage reverse gear or turn the selector lever to position **R**.
- **OR**: If the vehicle approaches an obstacle that is in its forwards path at a speed below 10 km/h (6 mph) **››› page 169, Automatic activation**. The obstacle is detected as of a distance of approx. 95 cm if the automatic connection is activated in the infotainment system. A reduced display is shown.

Automatic disconnection of Parking Aid

- Move the selector lever to position **P**.
- **OR**: accelerate to more than approx. 10 km/h (6 mph) forward.

Temporary suppression of sound in Parking Aid

- Press the 🔇 function button.

Change from reduced view to full view

- Engage reverse gear or turn the selector lever to position **R**.
- **OR**: press the car icon in reduced view.

If necessary, switch to the rear-assist image (Rear View Camera "RVC")

- Engage reverse gear or turn the selector lever to position **R**.
- **OR**: Press the **RVC** function button.

A short confirmation signal will be heard and the button symbol will light up yellow when the system is switched on.

Automatic activation

Fig. 183 Miniature indication of automatic activation

When the Parking System Plus is switched on automatically, a miniature of the vehicle will »

be displayed and the segments will be shown on the left side of the screen ››› Fig. 183.

Automatic activation occurs when slowly approaching an obstacle located in front of the vehicle. It only operates every time the speed is reduced below approximately 10 km/h (6 mph) for the first time.

If the parking aid is switched off using the button, the following actions must be carried out in order for it to automatically switch on:

- Switch off the ignition and switch it on again.
- **OR**: accelerate above 10 km/h (6 mph) before reducing speed below this number again.
- **OR**: place the selector lever in position **P** and then move it from this position.
- **OR**: switch on and off the automatic activation in the Easy Connect system menu.

The automatic activation with parking aid miniature indication can be switched on and off from the Easy Connect system menu ››› page 21:

- Switch the ignition on.
- Select: CAR button › **Settings** › **Parking and manoeuvring**.
- Select the **Automatic activation** option. When the function button check box is activated ☑, the function is on.

If the system has been activated automatically, an audible sound warning will only be given when obstacles in front are at a distance of less than 50 cm.

CAUTION

The automatic connection of the Parking Aid only works when you are driving slowly. If driving style is not adapted to the circumstances, an accident and serious injury or damage may be caused.

Segments of the visual indication

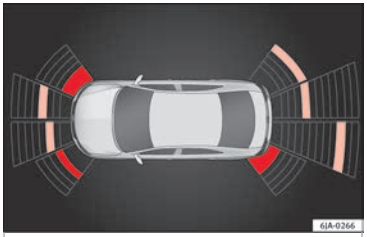


Fig. 184 Parking Aid display on the Easy Connect system screen.

The distance of separation from the obstacle can be estimated using the segments around the vehicle.

The optical indication of the segments works as follows:

White segments: a white segment is displayed when the obstacle is not within the vehicle's trajectory or the direction of travel is in the opposite direction to its location.

Yellow segments: obstacles located in the vehicle's trajectory and which are more than 30 cm away from the vehicle are displayed in yellow.

Red segments: obstacles that are less than 30 cm away from the vehicle are displayed in red.

Moreover, with the SEAT Media System Plus/Navi System radios, a yellow trail indicates the vehicle's expected journey based on the steering wheel angle.

Whenever the obstacle is located in the vehicle's direction of travel, the corresponding audible warning will sound.

As the vehicle approaches an obstacle, the segments are displayed closer to the vehicle. When the penultimate segment is displayed, this means that the vehicle has reached the collision zone. In the collision zone, the obstacles are represented in red, including those out of the path. Do not continue to move forward (or backward) ››› ⚠ in General information on page 167, ››› ❗ in General information on page 167 !

Adjusting the display and audible warnings

The settings for the display and audible warnings are controlled via the Easy Connect*.

Automatic activation

☑ **on** – activates the **Automatic activation** option ››› page 169.

☐ **off** – deactivates the **Automatic activation** option ››› page 169.

Front volume*

Volume in the front and rear area.

Front sound settings/sharpness*

Frequency (tone) of the sound in the front area.

Rear volume*

Volume in the rear area.

Rear sound settings/sharpness*

Frequency (tone) of the sound in the rear area.

Adjust volume

With the parking aid switched on, the active audio/video source volume will be reduced to the intensity of the selected setting.

Error messages

When the Parking Aid is activated or when it is switched on, if a continuous warning can be heard for several seconds (additionally, in the case of Parking system Plus, the LED of the P button flashes), there is a fault in the system.

Parking System Plus*

If there is a fault in a sensor, the symbol ⚠ is displayed on the Easy Connect display in front of/behind the vehicle. If a rear sensor is faulty, only the obstacles in the areas (A) and (B) are displayed ››› Fig. 181. If a front sensor is faulty, only the obstacles in the areas (C) and (D) are displayed.

Have the fault corrected by a specialised workshop without delay.

Towing bracket

In vehicles equipped with a towing bracket device from the factory, when the trailer is connected electrically, the Parking Aid rear sensors will not be activated when reverse gear is engaged, when the selector lever is turned to position **R** or when the button P is pressed.

Parking System Plus

The distance to possible obstacles at the rear of the vehicle will not be displayed on the screen and nor will it be indicated by means of audible sound signals.

The Easy Connect system screen will only display objects detected at the front, and the vehicle's trajectory will be hidden.

Rear Assist “Rear View Camera”*

Operating and safety warnings

⚠ WARNING

- **The Rear Assist does not make it possible to precisely calculate the distance from obstacles (people, vehicles, etc.) and nor can it overcome the system's own limits, hence using it may cause serious accidents and injuries if used negligently or without due care. The driver should be aware of his/her surroundings at all times to ensure safe driving.**
- **The camera lens expands and distorts the field of vision and displays the objects on the screen in a different, vague manner. The perception of distances is also distorted by this effect.**

»

- **Some objects may, due to the resolution of the display screen - not be displayed in a satisfactory manner or may not be displayed at all. Take special care with thin posts, fences, railings or trees that might not be displayed on screen and could damage the vehicle.**
- **The rear assist has blind spots where it is not possible to represent people or objects (small children, animals and certain objects cannot be detected in its field of vision). Monitor the vehicle's surrounding area at all times.**
- **Keep the camera lens clean, free of ice and snow, and do not cover it.**
- **The system is not a replacement for driver awareness. Supervise the parking operation at all times, as well as the vehicle's surrounding area. Adapt your speed and driving style at all times to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.**
- **Do not be distracted from the traffic by looking at the screen.**
- **The images on the rear assist screen are only two-dimensional. Due to a lack of spatial depth, protruding parts or holes in the road, for example, are more difficult to detect or may not be seen at all.**
- **Vehicle load modifies the representation of the orientation lines displayed. The width represented by the lines diminishes with vehicle load. Pay special attention to the vehicle's surroundings when the inside of the vehicle of the luggage compartment is carrying a heavy load.**

- **In the following situations, the objects or other vehicles shown in the navigation system display appear to be further away or closer than they really are: Pay special attention:**
  - **On moving from a horizontal plane to a slope.**
  - **On moving from a slope to a horizontal plane.**
  - **If the vehicle is heavily loaded at the rear.**
  - **When the vehicle approaches objects that are not on the ground surface or are jutting out from it. These objects may also be outside the camera's angle of vision when reversing.**

Note

- **It is important to take great care and pay special attention if you are not yet familiar with the system.**
- **Rear assist will not be available if the vehicle's rear lid is open.**

Instructions for use

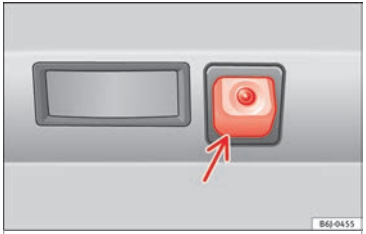


Fig. 185 On the rear bumper: location of the rear assist camera

A camera on the rear bumper aids the driver during reverse parking or manoeuvring ››› **Fig. 185**. The camera image is viewed together with orientation lines projected by the system on the Infotainment system screen. The bottom of the screen displays part of the bumper corresponding to the number plate area that will be used as reference by the driver.

Rear assist settings:

Rear assist offers the user the possibility to change the image's *brightness*, *contrast* and *colour* settings.

To change these settings:

- Park the vehicle in a safe place.
- Apply the parking brake.

- Switch the ignition on.
- If necessary, switch on the Infotainment system.
- Engage reverse gear or turn the selector lever to position **R**.
- Press the --- function button displayed on the right of the image.
- Make the desired adjustments on the menu by pressing the –/+ function buttons or by moving the corresponding scroll button.

Necessary conditions for parking and manoeuvring with the rear assist

The system should not be used in the following cases:

- If the image displayed is not very reliable or is distorted, for example low visibility or dirty lens.
- If the area behind the vehicle is not displayed very clearly or is incomplete.
- If the vehicle is heavily loaded at the rear.
- If the position and installation angle of the camera have been changed, e.g. after a rear-end collision. Have the system checked by a specialised workshop.

Familiarising yourself with the system

To familiarise yourself with the system, the orientation lines and their function, SEAT recommends practising parking and manoeuvring with the rear assist in a place without too much traffic or in a car park when there are good weather and visibility conditions.

Cleaning the camera lens

Keep the camera lens clean and clear of snow and ice:

- Moisten the lens using a normal alcohol-based glass cleaning product and clean the lens with a dry cloth.
- Remove snow using a small brush.
- Use de-icing spray to remove any ice.

CAUTION

- **Never use abrasive cleaning products to clean the camera lens.**
- **Do not use hot or warm water to remove ice or snow from the camera lens. Doing so could damage the camera.**

Parking and manoeuvring with the rear assist

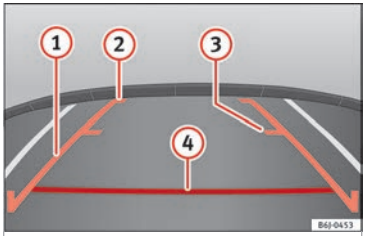


Fig. 186 Display on the Infotainment system screen: orientation lines.

Switching the system on and off

- The rear assist will switch on when the ignition is on or the engine running, on engaging reverse gear (manual gearbox) or on changing the selector lever to the **R** position (automatic gearbox).
- The system switches off 8 seconds after disengaging reverse gear (manual gearbox) or removing the selector lever from the **R** position (automatic gearbox). The system will also disconnect immediately after the ignition is switched off.

In combination with the Parking System Plus ››› page 167, the camera image will cease to be transmitted immediately when reverse gear is engaged or when the selector lever is moved from the **R** position, and the optical »

information provided by the Parking Aid system will be displayed.

Also in combination with the system, the rear assist image can also be concealed:

- By pressing one of the Infotainment system buttons on the display.
- OR: By pressing the miniature vehicle that appears on the left of the screen (which switches to the full-screen mode of the Parking System Plus's optical system).

If you wish to display the rear assist image again:

- Disengage reverse, or change the selector lever's position, engage reverse again or move the selector lever to position **R**.
- OR: Press the **RVC** function button[1)]

Meaning of the orientation lines

››› Fig. 186

1. **Side lines:** extension of the vehicle (the approximate width of the vehicle plus the rear view mirrors) on the road surface.
2. **End of the side lines:** the area marked in green ends approximately 2 m behind the vehicle on the road surface.
3. **Intermediate line:** indicates a distance of approximately 1 m behind the vehicle on the road surface.
4. **Red horizontal line:** indicates a safe distance of approximately 40 cm at the rear of the vehicle on the road surface.

Parking manoeuvre

- Place the vehicle in front of the parking space and engage reverse gear (manual gearbox) or move the selector to the **R** position (automatic gearbox).
- Reverse slowly, and turn the steering wheel so that the side orientation lines lead towards the parking space.
- Guide the vehicle into the parking space so that the side orientation lines run parallel to it.

cruise speed (Cruise control)*

Introduction

Read the additional information carefully
››› page 31

The cruise control system allows you to drive at a constant speed of 30 km/h (19 mph) or higher without having to press the accelerator. However, the speed is only maintained within the margin permitted by the engine power and the braking effect of the engine.

The warning lamp lights up on the general instrument panel if cruise control is switched on.

⚠ WARNING

- **For safety reasons the cruise control system must not be used in dense traffic or where roads conditions are poor (e.g. due to ice, aquaplaning, loose grit, snow). – Risk of accident!**
- **The programmed speed can only be re-established if it is not too high for current traffic conditions.**
- **Always switch the cruise control system off after using it in order to avoid involuntary use.**

ⓘ CAUTION

- **The cruise control cannot maintain a constant speed when the vehicle is moving downhill. The vehicle tends to accelerate under its own weight. Therefore, shift down or**

[1)] WARNING: the **RVC** function button will only be activated and available when the reverse gear is engaged or the selector lever is set to position **R**.

use the brake pedal in good time to slow the vehicle.

Note

- **In vehicles with an automatic gearbox, the cruise control system cannot be switched on if the selector lever is in position P, N or R.**
- **In vehicles with a manual gearbox, the cruise control cannot be switched on if first gear or reverse gear is engaged.**

Setting the speed

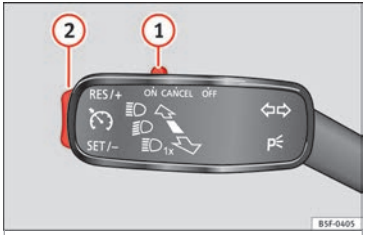


Fig. 187 Turn signal and main beam headlight lever: cruise control buttons.

Setting speed

– Move knob (1) ››› **Fig. 187** to the **ON** position.

– Briefly press rocker switch (2) in **SET** position when you have reached the speed you wish to set.

On releasing rocker switch (2) from **SET**, the current speed is stored and will remain constant without having to press the accelerator pedal.

Adjust the stored speed

Increasing speed by pressing the accelerator pedal

– Press the accelerator to increase the speed of the vehicle.

– Release the accelerator and the previously programmed speed will be resumed.

If, when pressing the accelerator, the vehicle exceeds the programmed speed by more than 10 km/h (6 mph) for more than 3 minutes, the set speed will be deleted. The speed will have to be stored again.

Increasing speed by pressing switch (2)

– Press rocker switch (2) ››› **Fig. 187** ››› **page 175** in **RES**.

– If the button is held down in the **RES** position, the speed increases continuously. Release the switch when the required speed is reached. The speed is stored.

Setting a lower speed

– The set speed can be **reduced** by pressing switch (2) ››› **Fig. 187** ››› **page 175** in **SET**.

– If the button is held down in the **SET** position, the speed decreases continuously. Release the switch when the required speed is reached. The speed is stored.

– On releasing the switch at speeds of less than 30 km/h (19 mph), no speed will be set and the memory will be deleted. The vehicle must be moving at a speed of over 30 km/h (19 mph) and switch (2) pressed again to **SET** for it to be set.

The speed can be reduced by pressing the brake pedal, which temporarily switches off the cruise control.

Temporary deactivation of cruise control

Cruise control **is switched off temporarily** by pressing switch (1) ››› **Fig. 187** ››› **page 175** in **CANCEL** or by pressing the brake or clutch pedal.

The set speed is stored.

To **recover** the set speed, briefly press switch (2) in **RES** once you have released the brake or clutch pedal.

Turning off the cruise control system

– Move knob (1) ››› Fig. 187 ››› page 175 to **OFF**.

Monitoring system Front Assist*

Introduction

The Front Assist Monitoring system helps to prevent rear collisions.

The Front Assist can warn the driver of collision hazards, prepare the vehicle for emergency braking in case of danger, assist the driver on braking and cause automatic braking.

The Front Assist is not a replacement for driver awareness.

Distance warning

If the system detects that safety is endangered by the proximity of the vehicle in front, it may warn the driver by means of a message on the instrument panel when driving at a speed of between approximately 60 km/h (37 mph) and 210 km/h (130 mph) ››› Fig. 188.

The warning moment varies depending on the traffic situation and driver behaviour.

Advance warning

If the system detects a possible collision with the vehicle in front, it may warn the driver by means of an audible warning and an indication on the instrument panel when driving at a speed of between approximately 30 km/h (18 mph) and 210 km/h (130 mph) ››› Fig. 188.

The warning moment varies depending on the traffic situation and driver behaviour. At the same time, the vehicle will prepare for a possible emergency braking ››› ⚠.

Critical warning

If the driver fails to react to the advance warning, the system may actively intervene in the brakes when driving at a speed of between approximately 30 km/h (18 mph) and 210 km/h (130 mph), generating a brief jolt to warn of the imminent collision.

Automatic braking

If the driver also fails to react to the advance warning, the system may brake the vehicle automatically, by progressively increasing braking effect driving at a speed of between approximately 5 km/h (3 mph) and 210 km/h (130 mph). By reducing speed in case of a possible collision, the system may contribute to reducing the consequences of an accident.

Front assist

If the Front Assist notices that the driver is not braking sufficiently in case of a collision hazard, the system can increase braking effect and thus avert the collision when driving at a speed of between approximately 5 km/h (3 mph) and 210 km/h (130 mph). Front assist only acts while the brake pedal is pressed down hard.

⚠ WARNING

The intelligent technology in the Front Assist cannot change the laws of physics. The driver is always responsible for braking in time. If the Front Assist issues a warning, then, depending on the traffic circumstances, you must brake immediately or dodge the obstacle.

- **Adapt your speed and safe distance to the vehicle in front of you at all times to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.**
- **The Front Assist alone cannot avoid accidents and serious injuries.**
- **In complex driving situations, the Front Assist may issue unnecessary warnings and intervene unnecessarily in braking, such as in traffic islands.**
- **If the operation of the Front Assist is impaired, for example, by dirt or because the radar sensor has lost its settings, the system may issue unnecessary warnings and intervene inopportunely in the braking.**

- **During driving, the Front Assist does not react to people or animals or vehicles crossing your path or which approach you head-on in the same lane.**
- **The driver must always be ready to take over the control of the vehicle.**

Note

- **When the Front Assist causes a braking, the brake pedal is “harder”.**
- **Automatic interventions by the Front Assist on the brakes may be interrupted by pressing the clutch, accelerator or moving the wheel.**
- **If the Front Assist does not work as described in this chapter (e.g. in intervenes several times unnecessarily), switch it off. Have the system checked by a specialised workshop. SEAT recommends visiting a SEAT dealership.**

On-screen warning lamps and messages

Fig. 188 On the instrument panel display: Warning indications.

Distance warning

If the safe distance with regard to the vehicle in front is exceeded, the relevant warning will appear on the instrument panel display .

WARNING

Observe the safety warnings ››› ⚠ in Warning and control lamps on page 98.

Note

When the Front Assist is connected, the indications on the instrument panel screen may be concealed by warnings from other functions, such as an incoming call.

Radar sensor

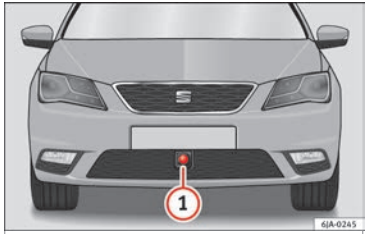


Fig. 189 On the front bumper: radar sensor.

A radar sensor is installed on the front bumper to determine the traffic situation ››› **Fig. 189** (1). This sensor can detect vehicles in front up to a distance of approximately 120 m.

The radar sensor's visibility may be impaired by dirt, mud or snow, or by environmental influences such as rain or mist. In this case the Front Assist monitoring system does not work. The instrument panel displays the following message: **`Front Assist: No sensor vision!`** If necessary clean the radar sensor ››› ❗.

When the radar sensor begins to operate properly again, the Front Assist will automatically be available again. The message will disappear from the instrument panel display. »

Front Assist operation may be affected by a strong radar reverse reflection. This may occur, for example, in a closed car park or due to the presence of metallic objects (e.g. rails on the road or sheets used in road works).

The area in front of and around the radar sensor should not be covered with adhesives, additional or similar headlights, as this may negatively affect Front Assist operation.

If structural modifications are made to the vehicle, for example, if the suspension is lowered or the front spoiler is modified, Front Assist operation may be affected. So structural modifications should only be made by specialised workshops. SEAT recommends visiting a SEAT dealership for this purpose.

If work is done incorrectly on the front of the vehicle, the radar sensor could be damaged or lose its settings, and Front Assist operation may be affected. So repair work should only be made by specialised workshops. SEAT recommends visiting a SEAT dealership for this purpose.

CAUTION

If you have the sensation that the radar sensor is damaged or has lost its settings, disconnect the Front Assist. This will avoid possible damage. If this occurs have it adjusted.

- **The sensor may become damaged or lose its settings when knocked, for example, during a parking manoeuvre. This may compromise the system's efficacy or disconnect it.**
- **Repairs to the radar sensor require specialist knowledge and special tools. SEAT recommends visiting a SEAT dealership for this purpose.**
- **Clean away the snow with a brush and the ice preferably with a solvent-free de-icer spray.**

Operating the Front Assist monitoring system

Fig. 190 On the instrument panel display: Front Assist switched off message.

Fig. 191 On the turn signal and main beam headlight lever: button for the driver assistance systems

The Front Assist monitoring system is active whenever the ignition is switched on.

When the Front Assist is switched off, so too are the advance warning function (pre warning) and the distance warning.

SEAT recommends leaving the Front Assist always switched on. Exceptions ›› **page 179, Switching the Front Assist Monitoring System off in the following situations**.

Switching the Front Assist monitoring system on and off

With the ignition switched on, the Front Assist can be switched on and off as follows:

- Select the corresponding menu option using the button for the driver assistance systems ›› **Fig. 191**.

- **OR:** switch the system on or off in the Easy Connect system with the button CAR and the function buttons and Driver Assist ››› page 21.

When the Front Assist monitoring system is switched off, the instrument panel will inform that it has been switched off with the following indicator ››› **Fig. 190**.

Switching the advance warning function on or off

The pre-warning function can be switched on or off in the Easy Connect system with the button CAR and the function buttons and Driver Assist ››› page 21.

The system will store the setting for the next time the ignition is switched on.

SEAT recommends keeping the advance warning function switched on at all times.

Switching distance warning on and off

If the safe distance with regard to the vehicle in front is exceeded, the relevant warning will appear on the instrument panel display . In this case, increase the safe distance.

The distance warning function can be activated or deactivated in the Easy Connect system with the button CAR and the function buttons and Driver Assist ››› page 21.

The system will store the setting for the next time the ignition is switched on.

SEAT recommends keeping the distance warning switched on at all times.

Switching the Front Assist Monitoring System off in the following situations

In the following situations the Front Assist Monitoring System should be deactivated due to the system's limitations ››› ⚠:

- When the vehicle is to be towed.
- If the vehicle is on a test bed.
- When the radar sensor is damaged.
- If the radar sensor takes a heavy knock, for example in a rear collision.
- If it intervenes several times unnecessarily.
- If the radar sensor is covered temporarily with some kind of accessory, such as an additional headlight or the like.
- When the vehicle is to be loaded on a lorry, ferry or train.

⚠ WARNING

If the Front Assist is not switched off in the situations described, serious accidents and injuries may occur.

- **Switch off the Front Assist in critical situations.**

System limitations

The Front Assist Monitoring System has certain physical limitations inherent in the system. Thus, in certain circumstances some of the system's reactions may be inopportune or be delayed from the driver's standpoint. So pay attention in order to intervene if necessary.

The following conditions may cause the Front Assist Monitoring System not to react or do so too late:

- On taking tight bends.
- Pressing the accelerator all the way down.
- If the Front Assist is switched off or damaged.
- If the ASR has been manually disconnected.
- If the ESC is controlling.
- If several brake lights of the vehicle or electrically connected trailer are damaged.
- If the radar sensor is dirty or covered.
- If there are metal objects, e.g. rails on the road or sheets used in road works.
- If the vehicle is reversing.
- If the vehicle over-accelerates.
- In case of snow or heavy rain.
- In case of narrow vehicles, such as motorbikes.

»

- Misaligned vehicles.
- Vehicles crossing the other's path.
- Vehicles approaching in the opposite direction.
- Special loads and accessories of other vehicles that jut out over the sides, backwards or over the top.

City Emergency braking function

Fig. 192 On the instrument panel display: advance warning message

The City Emergency braking function is part of the Front Assist monitoring and is active whenever the system is switched on.

Depending on the equipment, the pre-warning function can be switched on or off in the Easy Connect system with the button CAR and the function buttons and Driver Assist ››› page 21.

The City Emergency braking function picks up, at speeds between 5 km/h (3 mph) and 30 km/h (19 mph) approximately, the traffic situation in front of the vehicle up to a distance of about 10 m.

If the system detects a possible collision with a vehicle in front of it, the vehicle prepares for a possible emergency braking ›››.

If the driver fails to react to a possible collision, the system may brake the vehicle automatically, by progressively increasing braking effect driving to reduce speed in the event of a collision. The system can thus help to reduce the consequences of an accident.

Status display

Automatic deceleration by means of the City Emergency braking function is displayed on the instrument panel by means of the advance warning ››› **Fig. 192**[1].

WARNING

The smart technology included in the City Emergency braking function cannot defy the laws of physics. The driver is always responsible for braking in time.

- **Adapt your speed and safe distance to the vehicle in front of you at all times to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.**
- **The City Emergency braking function alone cannot prevent accidents or serious injury.**
- **In complex driving situations, the City Emergency braking function may issue unnecessary warnings and intervene inopportunely in braking, such as in work areas or if there are metal rails.**
- **If the operation of the City Emergency braking function is impaired, for example, by dirt or because the radar sensor has lost its settings, the system may issue unnecessary warnings and intervene inopportunely in the braking.**
- **During driving, the City Emergency braking function does not react to people or animals or vehicles crossing your path or which approach you head-on in the same lane.**

Note

- **When the City Emergency braking function causes a braking, the brake pedal is “harder”.**
- **Automatic interventions on the brakes by the City Emergency braking function may be**

[1] The symbol on the instrument panels with colour display is in colour.

interrupted by pressing the clutch, accelerator or moving the wheel.

- **The City Emergency braking function can brake the vehicle until it stops completely. However, the brake system does not halt the vehicle permanently. Use the foot brake!**
- **If several inopportune intervenes occur, switch off the Front Assist and with it the City Emergency braking function. Take it to a specialised workshop, SEAT recommends visiting a SEAT dealership.**
- **If numerous unnecessary interventions occur, the City Emergency braking function may switch off automatically.**

Start-Stop System*

Operating

Fig. 193 Instrument panel: Start-Stop system button

The Start-Stop system helps save fuel and reduce harmful and CO_2 emissions.

The system is automatically switched on every time the ignition is switched on.

The system automatically switches off the engine when the vehicle is stationary, e.g. waiting at traffic lights.

The current status of the Start-Stop system is displayed on the general instrument panel display.

Automatic engine shut down (Stop phase)

– Stop the vehicle (if necessary using the handbrake).

– Shift to neutral.

– Release the clutch pedal.

Automatic engine start up (Start phase)

– Press the clutch.

Switching the Start-Stop system on and off

The Start-Stop system can be switched on and off by pressing the Ⓐ OFF ››› **Fig. 193** button.

The warning lamp in the button will light up when the system is switched off.

If the vehicle is in Stop phase when the button is pressed, the engine will start immediately.

The Start-Stop system works under complex driving conditions that are difficult to detect without specialist technology. The set of necessary conditions for the correct operating of the Start-Stop system are indicated below.

Conditions for automatic engine shut down (Stop phase)

- Selector lever in neutral.
- Clutch pedal not pressed.
- Driver with seat belt fastened.
- Driver door closed.
- The bonnet closed.
- Vehicle stationary.
- The factory-fitted towing bracket is not electrically connected to a trailer.
- Engine at operating temperature.
- Vehicle's battery sufficiently charged.
- Vehicle not on a very steep slope
- Engine speed below 1,200 rpm.
- Vehicle battery temperature is neither too high nor too low.
- Sufficient brake system pressure.
- Difference between outside temperature and set interior temperature not too great
- Vehicle speed since the last time the engine started was above 3 km/h (2 mph).
- Particulate filter not being cleaned

››› page 164.

»

- Front wheels not overly turned (steering wheel turned less than three quarters of a turn)

Conditions for engine start up (Start phase)

- Clutch pedal pressed.
- Max./min. temperature set.
- Windscreen defrost function switched on.
- High blower speed.
- Start-Stop button pressed.

Conditions for automatic engine start up without driver involvement

- Vehicle moving at a speed of over 3 km/h (2 mph).
- Difference between outside temperature and interior temperature is too great
- Vehicle's battery insufficiently charged.
- Insufficient brake system pressure.

If the driver seat belt is unfastened for more than 30 seconds in Stop phase, the engine must be started using the ignition key. Please observe the messages on the general instrument panel display.

Warnings on the instrument panel display (valid for vehicles not fitted with an informative display)

FAULT: Start-Stop	Fault in the Start-Stop system
START-STOP IMPOSSIBLE	Engine cannot be automatically shut down
START-STOP ACTIVE	Automatic engine shut down (Stop phase)
SWITCH OFF IGNITION	Switch the ignition off
START MANUALLY	Start the engine manually

⚠ WARNING

- **If the engine is switched off, neither the brake servo nor the power steering will work.**
- **Do not move the vehicle when the engine is switched off.**

CAUTION

Switch off the Start-Stop system **»» page 166** **before driving through a pool of water on the road.**

Note

- **The battery temperature may reflect changes in outside temperature after several hours. If the vehicle has been stopped outside at temperatures below zero or in direct sunlight, for example, the battery temperature may take several hours to reach the values required for the correct operating of the Start-Stop system.**
- **If the Climatronic system is operating automatically, this could impair automatic engine shut down under certain conditions.**

Tiredness detection (break recommendation)*

Introduction

The Fatigue detection informs the driver when their driving behaviour shows signs of fatigue.

⚠ WARNING

Do not let the comfort afforded by the Fatigue detection system tempt you into taking any risks when driving. Take regular breaks, sufficient in length when making long journeys.

- **The driver always assumes the responsibility of driving to their full capacity.**
- **Never drive if you are tired.**
- **The system does not detect the tiredness of the driver in all circumstances. Consult the information in the section** **»» page 183, System limitations.**
- **In some situations, the system may incorrectly interpret an intended driving manoeuvre as driver tiredness.**
- **No warning is given in the event of the effect called microsleep!**
- **Please observe the indications on the instrument panel and act as is necessary.**

Note

- **Fatigue detection has been developed for driving on motorways and well paved roads only.**
- **If there is a fault in the system, have it checked by a specialised workshop.**

Function and operation

Fig. 194 On the instrument panel display: fatigue detection symbol.

Fatigue detection determines the driving behaviour of the driver when starting a journey, making a calculation of tiredness. This is constantly compared with the current driving behaviour. If the system detects that the driver is tired, an audible warning is given with a sound and an optic warning is shown with a symbol and complementary message on the instrument panel display ››› **Fig. 194**. The message on the instrument panel display is shown for approximately 5 seconds, and depending on the case, is repeated. The system stores the last message displayed.

The message on the instrument panel display can be switched off by pressing the OK/RESET button on the windscreen wiper lever or the button OK on the multi function steering wheel ››› page 23.

The message can be recalled to the instrument panel display using the multifunction display ››› page 23.

Conditions of operation

Driving behaviour is only calculated on speeds above about 65 km/h (40 mph) up to around 200 km/h (125 mph).

Switching on and off

Fatigue detection can be activated or deactivated in the Easy Connect system with the button CAR and the function button Setup ››› page 99. A mark indicates that the adjustment has been activated.

System limitations

The Fatigue detection has certain limitations inherent to the system. The following conditions can limit the Fatigue detection or prevent it from functioning.

- At speeds below 65 km/h (40 mph)
- At speeds above 200 km/h (125 mph)
- When cornering
- On roads in poor condition
- In unfavourable weather conditions
- When a sporty driving style is employed
- In the event of a serious distraction to the driver

Fatigue detection will be restored when the vehicle is stopped for more than 15 minutes, when the ignition is switched off or when the driver has unbuckled their seat belt and opened the door.

In the event of slow driving during a long period of time (below 65 km/h, 40 mph) the system automatically re-establishes the tiredness calculation. When driving at a faster speed the driving behaviour will be recalculated.

Towing bracket device

Driving with a trailer

Technical requirements

If your vehicle has a factory-fitted towing bracket or is equipped with a selection of SEAT Original Accessories, it meets all the relevant technical and legal requirements.

In vehicles with a towing bracket it is possible to remove the ball joint, situated (together with the special assembly instructions) in the housing for the spare wheel in the vehicle luggage compartment ››› page 75, Vehicle tool kit*.

Your vehicle is fitted with a 13-pole power socket for the electrical connection between the trailer and the vehicle. If the trailer you are going to use has a **7-pin connector**, the corresponding adaptor, acquired from the SEAT Original Accessories Catalogue, can be used.

If a towing bracket is to be retro-fitted to the car, it must be done according to the instructions of the towing bracket manufacturer.

Note

Any queries that may arise can be directed to an authorised SEAT dealer.

Trailer weight

Trailer weight

The combined vehicle and trailer must be balanced. To do so use the maximum permitted towing bracket load. An insufficient weight exerted by the trailer drawbar on the ball joint of the towing bracket will have a negative impact upon the response of the vehicle-trailer assembly on the road.

Weight distribution

Distribute loads in the trailer so that heavy objects are as near to the axle as possible. Ensure that the objects do not move.

If the towing vehicle is empty and the trailer loaded then the load distribution is incorrect. However, if these conditions cannot be avoided, drive very slowly.

Tyre pressure values

Correct the tyre pressure in your vehicle to “total load” ››› page 216, Useful life of tyres.

Trailer weight

Never exceed the authorised trailer weight under any circumstances ››› page 221, Technical specifications.

The trailer weights listed are only applicable for **altitudes** up to 1000 m above sea level. Due to lower air density, engine power decreases depending on the increase in altitude, this also reduces climbing ability, which requires a reduction of the weight of the vehicle with a trailer by 10% for every 1000 m increase in altitude. The weight of the assembly is calculated by adding the vehicle weight (loaded) to the trailer weight (loaded). Always drive with special care when towing a trailer.

The towed load and support load information that is displayed on the towing bracket manufacturers label are only values for the verification of the device. The correct figures for your specific vehicle, which are usually lower than these figures, are given in the documentation of your vehicle.

WARNING

- **Exceeding the maximum established load per axle and the maximum towing bracket load in addition to the maximum permitted load or the load of the vehicle + trailer assembly can cause accidents and serious injuries.**
- **A sliding load can considerably affect the stability and safety of the vehicle + trailer assembly, resulting in accidents and serious injuries.**

Driving with a trailer

Exterior mirrors

Check whether you can see enough of the road behind the trailer with the standard rear vision mirrors. If this is not the case, you should have additional exterior mirrors fitted. Observe the relevant statutory requirements of the country you are in.

Headlights

Before starting a journey, also check the headlight beam settings with the trailer hitched up. Adjust the headlight range settings if necessary ››› page 117, Main light range control.

Driving speed

For your own safety do not drive faster than the maximum permitted speed indicated on the trailer.

At all times, immediately reduce speed if you detect the slightest swaying movement of the trailer. Never try to “return the trailer to a straight position” by accelerating.

Brakes

Brake in due course! If the trailer has an **overrun brake**, apply the brakes gently at first and then, firmly. This will prevent the jerking that can be caused by locking of trailer wheels. Change to a lower gear in good time before descending a slope in order to take advantage of the engine brake.

The trailer is incorporated into the vehicle's anti-theft alarm system:

- When the vehicle has a factory-fitted anti-theft alarm and a towing bracket.
- When the trailer is electrically connected to the vehicle via the towing bracket socket.
- When the vehicle electrical device and the towing bracket are operational.
- When the vehicle is locked and the vehicle's anti-theft alarm device is activated.

Once the electrical connection is interrupted with the vehicle trailer locked, the alarm sounds.

Always switch off the vehicle anti-theft alarm device before connecting or disconnecting a trailer. The vehicle anti-theft alarm device could cause the alarm to sound ››› page 112, Anti-theft alarm system*.

Engine overheating

In the event that the coolant temperature gauge needle moves to the right section of the scale or to the red area, immediately reduce speed. If the control lamp flashes on the general instrument panel, stop the vehicle and switch off the engine. Wait several minutes and check the coolant level in the tank ››› page 208.

Please observe the following indications ››› page 208, Control lamp.

The coolant temperature can be reduced by switching on the heating.

⚠ WARNING

- **Adjust your speed to suit the road and traffic conditions.**
- **An electrical installation that is connected incorrectly or by non-specialised personnel can prevent the connection of the current to the trailer and cause faults in the operation of the electrical system throughout the entire vehicle, leading to accidents and serious injury.**
- **All electrical work must be carried out only by specialised services.**
- **Never directly connect the trailer electrical device to the electrical sockets of the reverse driving lights or other sources of electrical current.**

ⓘ CAUTION

- **Avoid corners, and sudden and sharp braking.**
- **Once the trailing arm has been removed, place the corresponding cover on the hole of the fastening point. This prevents dirt from entering the hole – see the trailer system assembly manual.**

»

Note

- **In the event of frequent journeys with a trailer, we recommend also having the vehicle inspected in between the service intervals.**
- **When connecting and disconnecting the trailer, the handbrake must be applied.**
- **For technical reasons, trailers with LED reverse lights cannot be incorporated into the vehicle anti-theft alarm system.**

Towing bracket device for trailer

Introduction

If the vehicle is equipped with a towing bracket device from the factory or is a genuine SEAT accessory, it meets all national technical and legal requirements for towing.

Your vehicle is fitted with a 13-pin power socket for the electrical connection between the trailer and the vehicle. If the towing bracket is equipped with a **7-pin connector**, you can use the corresponding available adaptor that is a genuine SEAT accessory.

The towing device has a maximum vertical load of **50 kg**.

WARNING

- **Before driving with the ball-headed bar fitted, verify its correct assembly and placement in the clamping bush.**
- **Do not use the ball-headed bar if it is not correctly placed and fixed in the clamping bush.**
- **Do not use the towing device for towing if it is damaged or has missing parts.**
- **Do not modify or adapt the towing device connection.**
- **Never disengage the ball-headed bar with the trailer still hitched.**

CAUTION

Be careful not to damage the paint on the bumper when handling the ball-headed bar.

Description

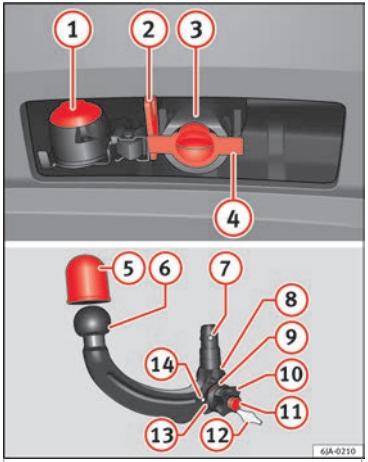


Fig. 195 Towing bracket device support for hitching/ball-headed bar.

The ball-headed bar is detachable. It is located in the spare wheel compartment or in the spare wheel compartment in the boot **››› page 75, Vehicle tool kit***.

Key to ››› **Fig. 195**

1. 13-pin socket
2. Safety flange

(3) Clamping bush
(4) Clamping bush cap
(5) Ball head cover
(6) Ball-headed bar
(7) Locking balls
(8) Centred
(9) Red marking on the manual regulator
(10) Manual regulator
(11) Key
(12) Key slot cover
(13) Red marking on the manual regulator
(14) White marking on the ball-headed bar

Note

Contact an Authorised Service Partner if you lose your key.

Placing in service position

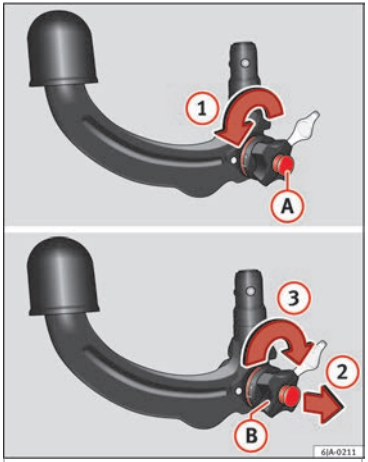


Fig. 196 Placing in service position.

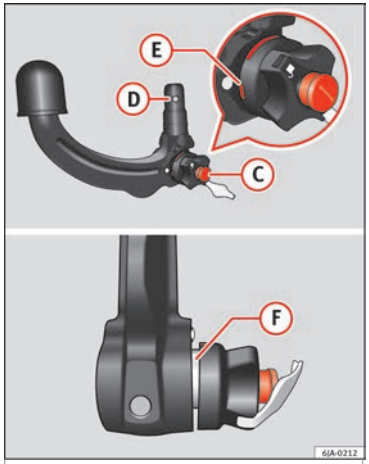


Fig. 197 Service position.

Before assembling, place the ball-headed bar in service position.

– Turn key (A) fully in the direction of arrow (1) ››› **Fig. 196**.

– Hold the ball-headed bar with your left hand.

– Pull manual regulator (B) outward in the direction of arrow (2) and turn it fully in the direction of arrow (3).

»

The manual regulator will remain in this position.

Service position ››› Fig. 197

- Key (C) is in an open position – the key arrow points to the “unlocked” symbol. The key cannot be removed from the key slot.
- The (D) locking balls may be fully inserted into the body of the ball-headed bar by applying some pressure.
- The red (E) marking on the manual regulator points towards the white marking on the ball-headed bar.
- Between the manual regulator and the body of the ball-headed bar there is a clearly visible space of approximately 4 mm (F).

Once the ball-headed bar has been positioned like this, it will be ready to be placed in the clamping bush.

⚠ WARNING

Do not use the ball-headed bar if it cannot be correctly placed in the service position.

ⓘ CAUTION

The key cannot be removed from the manual regulator key slot when it is in the service position.

Assembly of the ball-headed bar

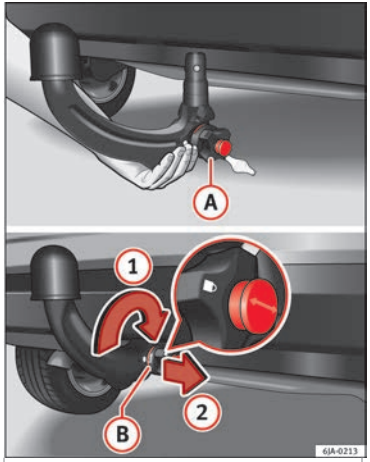


Fig. 198 Placing the ball-headed bar/locking and removing the key.

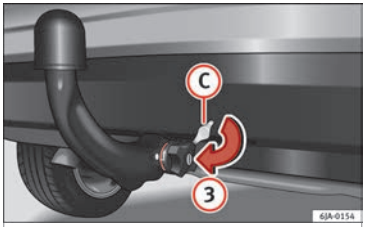


Fig. 199 Placing the key slot cover.

– Remove the cap from the clamping bush (4) ››› Fig. 195 by pulling downwards.

– Place the ball-headed bar in the service position ››› page 187.

– Hold the ball-headed bar from underneath ››› Fig. 198 and push it into the clamping bush as far as possible until you hear it click into place ››› ⚠.

The manual regulator (A) **automatically** turns in the opposite direction, adjusting to the ball-headed bar ››› ⚠.

– Switch off the manual regulator lock with key (B) by turning the key fully to the right in the direction of arrow (1) – the arrow in the key displays the “locked” symbol.

– Remove the key in the direction of arrow (2).

– Place cover (C) over the manual regulator lock in the direction of arrow (3) ››› Fig. 199.

– Verify the correct placement of the ball-headed bar ››› page 189.

⚠ WARNING

- **Do not hold the manual regulator with your hand when fitting the ball-headed bar since you could sustain injuries to your fingers.**
- **When mounting the ball-headed bar, always lock it with a key and remove the key from the slot.**
- **The ball-headed bar must not be in the service position with the key in the key slot.**
- **If the ball-headed bar is not placed in the service position you will not be able to place it in the clamping bush.**

CAUTION

When removing the key, always place the cover over the key slot of the manual regulator to prevent dirt from entering.

Note

Once removed, place the clamping bush cap in an appropriate location in the boot.

Verification of correct placement

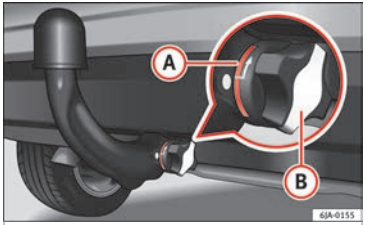


Fig. 200 Correct placement of the ball-headed bar.

Before using the ball-headed bar, ensure it is correctly fitted.

Ensure that:

- The ball-headed bar does not come out of the clamping bush in a “jerky” manner.
- The red mark (A) ››› **Fig. 200** on the manual regulator signals toward the white mark on the ball-headed bar.
- The manual regulator is adjusted to the ball-headed bar, leaving no space between them.
- The regulator is locked and the key has been removed.
- Cover (B) has been placed over the manual regulator lock.

⚠ WARNING

Only use the towing bracket device when the ball-headed bar is properly fitted!

Disassembly of the ball-headed bar

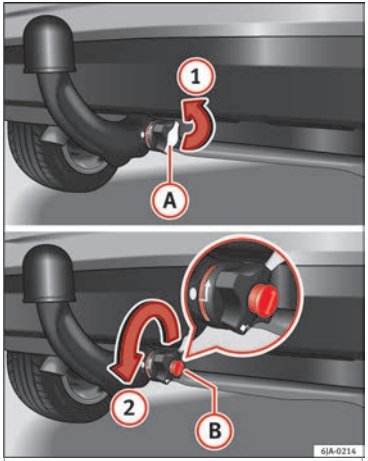


Fig. 201 Remove the key slot cover/unlock with the key.

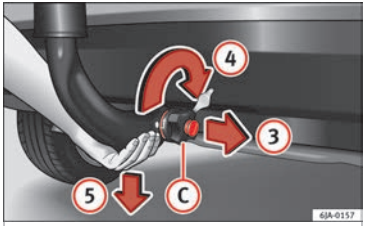


Fig. 202 Unblock the ball-headed bar.

– Remove cover (A) from over the regulator key slot in the direction of arrow (1) ››› **Fig. 201**.

– Insert key (B) in the key slot.

– Open the manual regulator lock by turning key (B) fully to the left in the direction of arrow (2). The arrow on the key points to the "unlocked" symbol.

– Hold the ball-headed bar from underneath ››› **Fig. 202** and remove manual regulator (C) with your other hand in the direction of arrow (3).

– Turn the removed regulator fully in the direction of arrow (4) and hold it firmly in this position.

– Remove the ball-headed bar from the clamping bush, pulling downward in the direction of arrow (5).

The ball-headed bar should be placed in the service position so that it is ready to be inserted into the clamping bush ››› ❗.

– Place the cover over the clamping bush (4) ››› **Fig. 195**.

⚠ WARNING

- **Never leave the ball-headed bar unsecured in the boot. It could be damaged in the event of sudden braking, putting the safety of passengers at risk!**
- **Never disassemble the ball-headed bar with the trailer still hitched.**

ⓘ CAUTION

- **If you do not turn the manual regulator fully, it will return to its original position when the ball-headed bar is removed. The manual regulator will be stuck to the ball-headed bar and you will not be able to put it in the service position. Therefore, before you assemble it again, you must place the ball-headed bar in this position.**
- **When disassembling, place the cap on the clamping bush holder's key slot. This way you will prevent dirt from entering the clamping bush.**

Note

- **Before disassembling the ball-headed bar, we recommend placing the cover on the ball head.**

- **Clean the ball-headed bar thoroughly before returning it to the on-board toolbox.**

Use and maintenance

Cover the clamping bush with the cap to prevent dirt from entering.

Before hooking on the trailer, check the ball head and, if necessary, lubricate it with adequate lubricant.

Place the protective cover over the ball head when storing the bar. This way, you will avoid getting the boot dirty.

If it gets dirty, clean and dry the clamping bush thoroughly with an appropriate product.

CAUTION

The top part of the clamping bush opening is lubricated. Be careful not to remove this lubrication.

Advice

Care and maintenance

Accessories and modifications to the vehicle

Accessories, replacement parts and repair work

If you wish to retrofit accessories in the vehicle, or if a part of the vehicle has been replaced by a new part or technical modifications are required, the following instructions must be taken into account:

- **Before** purchasing accessories or spare parts and **before** making technical modifications, always request advice from an Authorised SEAT dealer ››› ⚠.
- In the event that technical modifications are carried out on the vehicle, the instructions and regulations specified by the company, SEAT, must be observed.

No damage will be caused to the vehicle if the established procedures are respected, which guarantees safe driving and operation. After the modifications are carried out, the vehicle will comply with the restrictions and regulations of the highway code. More information can be obtained at an Authorised SEAT dealer, where all jobs required can be carried out appropriately.

Vehicle improvements and modifications

The owner must keep the technical documentation regarding the modifications carried out on the vehicle so it can be handed over to those responsible for processing end-of-life vehicles. This ensures end-of-life processing of the vehicle, while protecting the environment.

Work done on the electrical components and software can cause disruption in operations. Due to the interconnection of electronic components, their malfunction can also impair systems that are not directly affected. This can adversely affect reliability of the vehicle, and can produce excessive wear of the parts.

Damage caused by technical modifications that are not made with the consent of SEAT will be excluded from the warranty – see warranty certificate.

⚠ WARNING

- **Jobs or modifications unduly carried out on your vehicle can cause disruption to operations - Risk of accident!**
- **We recommend that you use only expressly authorised SEAT Accessories and SEAT Original Spare Parts for your vehicle. The reliability, safety and compatibility with your vehicle of SEAT original spare parts and accessories has been verified.**
- **Despite the continuous observation of the market, we cannot judge nor guarantee the suitability of other products for your vehicle, be they authorised products or products approved by a state testing facility.**

Note

SEAT original spare parts and accessories can be purchased at authorised SEAT dealers where the purchased parts can also be fitted.

Modifications and effects of the airbag system

In the adjustment and modification, respect the SEAT directive.

Modifications and corrections of the front bumper, doors, front seats, roof or bodywork must be carried out at authorised SEAT workshops. Components of the airbag system can be found in these parts of the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

- **Airbag modules must never be repaired. They must be replaced.**
- **Never fit components of the airbag system removed from old vehicles or those originating from a recycling process in the vehicle.**

- **The modification of the suspension of the vehicle wheels, including the use of non-permitted combinations of tyres and rims can alter the operation of the airbag system and increase the risk of serious or fatal injuries in an accident.**
- **During all jobs on the airbag system, in addition to the removal and fitting of parts of the system in the course of other repair jobs, parts of the airbag system can be damaged. Therefore in the event of an accident, this may cause the airbags to activate incorrectly or not activate at all.**

Radio and aerial reception

In vehicles factory-fitted with an audio or navigation system, the aerial may be installed in different places:

- inside the rear window next to the heating elements,
- on the roof of the vehicle.

Care and cleaning

Introduction

Regular and suitable care helps to **maintain the useful life** of your vehicle. This may also be one of the requirements for upholding any warranty claims in the event of corrosion or paint defects.

We recommend you use cleaning products from the SEAT Original Accessories programme available in SEAT dealers. Please follow the instructions for use on the packaging.

⚠ WARNING

- **Cleaning products and other materials used for car care can damage the health if misused.**
- **Always keep car care materials in a safe place out of the reach of children. Risk of poisoning!**
- **When washing the car during the winter season: Moisture and ice on the brakes may affect braking efficiency. Risk of accident!**
- **The ignition must always be switched off when the car is washed. Risk of accident!**
- **Do not clean the underside of the car or inside the wheel arches without protecting your hands and arms. You may cut yourself on sharp metal parts!**
- **Perfumes and air fresheners inside the vehicle may be harmful to health at high temperatures in the interior.**

ⓘ CAUTION

- **Check the colour-fastness of your clothing to avoid damaging or visibly staining the fabric (leather), upholstery and fabric trim.**
- **Cleaning products containing solvents may damage the material being cleaned.**
- **Do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight. Risk of damage to paintwork.**
- **If washing the vehicle with a hose in winter, do not direct the jet of water directly at the locks or at the door seals or bonnet. Risk of freezing.**
- **Do not use sponges for removing insects or abrasive household sponges, etc. on painted surfaces. Risk of damage to the painted surface!**
- **Do not put stickers on the inner side of the rear window in areas where heating elements or the aerial are located. This could cause damage and, in the case of the aerial, radio and navigation system reception faults.**
- **Do not clean the inside of the window with sharp objects or corrosive or acidic cleaning products. Risk of damaging the heating elements or the aerial.**
- **Do not attach any fragrance or air freshener to the dash panel. Risk of damage to the dash panel!**
- **To avoid damaging the parking aid system sensors, spray them only briefly at a minimum distance of 10 cm when cleaning the vehicle with a high-pressure or steam cleaner.**
- **Do not clean the roof panel with a brush. Risk of damage to the panel surface!**

»

For the sake of the environment

- **The packaging of the product used to care for your vehicle is hazardous waste. It must be disposed of according to current local law.**
- **Only wash the car in special wash bays.**

Note

- **Remove stains from fresh ball-pen and other inks, lipstick, shoe cream and similar stains on the fabric (leather), upholstery and fabric trim as soon as possible.**
- **We recommend that you visit an authorised SEAT dealer to clean and care for the interior of your vehicle, due to the problems that may arise when cleaning and caring for the interior of your vehicle and to the utensils and knowledge required.**

Washing the vehicle

The best protection of the vehicle from the harmful influences of the environment involves **frequent** washing and waxing. The frequency with which the vehicle is washed depends on many different factors, such as:

- Frequency of use
- Type of parking (garage, underneath trees, etc.)
- Time of year
- Weather conditions
- Environmental conditions

The longer substances such as insects, bird droppings, resinous tree sap, road dirt, industrial deposits, tar, soot or road salt and other aggressive materials remain on the paintwork, the more damage they do. High temperatures (for instance in strong sunlight) further intensify the corrosive effect.

After the winter season, it is important to have the **underside of the vehicle** washed thoroughly.

car washes

Your vehicle can be washed in an automatic car wash.

Before going through an automatic car wash, be sure to take the usual precautions such as closing the windows, etc.

If the vehicle has special accessories such as spoilers or a roof rack or two-way radio aerial, etc., it is advisable to consult the car wash operator beforehand.

The windscreen wiper rubbers must be degreased after going after the car wash and waxing.

Washing by hand

When washing the car by hand, use plenty of water to soften the dirt first and rinse off as well as possible.

Then clean the vehicle with a **sponge**, **glove** or **brush**. Start on the roof and work down. Use only slight pressure when cleaning the painted surfaces of the vehicle. A **car shampoo** should only be used for very persistent dirt.

Rinse the sponge or glove thoroughly and often.

Wheels, sills and underside should be cleaned last. Use a second sponge for this.

After washing, rinse the vehicle thoroughly and then dry with a chamois.

Washing with high-pressure cleaners

When cleaning the vehicle with a high-pressure cleaner, always follow the operating instructions for the equipment. This particularly applies to the **operating pressure** and the **distance** of the spray from the surface of the vehicle. Do not hold the spray nozzle too close to the parking aid system sensors and soft materials, such as rubber hoses or insulating material.

⚠ WARNING

Do no use a nozzle that sprays the water out in a direct stream or one that has a “rotating jet”!

CAUTION

Do not use water hotter than +60°C (140°F). Risk of damage to the vehicle!

Stickers attached by the factory

Follow these directions to avoid damaging the stickers:

- Do not use high pressure cleaners.
- To remove ice or snow from the stickers do not use window scrapers or ice scrapers.
- Do not polish the stickers.
- Do not use dirty cloths or sponges.
- Preferably wash using a soft sponge and soft neutral soap.

Sensors and camera lenses

- Use a small brush to remove snow and a de-icer spray to remove ice.
- Clean the sensors with a solvent-free product and a soft, dry cloth.
- Moisten the camera lens using a standard alcohol-based glass cleaning agent and clean the lens with a dry cloth.

CAUTION

- **When you clean the vehicle with a pressure washer:**
  - **Stay a suitable distance from the sensors on the front and rear bumpers.**
  - **Do not clean the camera lenses or surrounding area with the pressure washer.**
- **Never use warm or hot water to remove snow and ice from the reverse camera lens, as it could crack the lens.**
- **Never use abrasive cleaning agents on the lens.**

Vehicle paint waxing and polishing

Care

To a great extent, good waxing protects the vehicle surface from the harmful effects of the environment.

The vehicle must be treated with a high quality, hard wax when water no longer forms droplets on clean paintwork.

A new coat of high quality, hard wax can be applied to the clean, painted surface only when it has fully dried. Even if a wax solution is used regularly in the car wash, it is advisable to protect the paint with a coat of wax at least twice a year.

Polishing

Polishing is only necessary if the paint has lost its shine, and the gloss cannot be brought back by applying wax.

The vehicle must be waxed after polishing if the polish used does not contain wax compounds to seal the paint.

CAUTION

- **Never wax the windows.**
- **Do not use polishes and hard wax on painted parts with a matt finish or on plastic parts.**
- **Do not polish your vehicle in a sandy or dusty environment.**

Cleaning of chromed parts

Clean the chrome first with a clean cloth and then buff up with a soft, dry cloth. If this does not clean the chrome properly, use a special chrome cleaner.

CAUTION

Do not polish the chrome in a dusty environment or it could be scratched.

Damage to the paint

Minor damage to the paint, such as scratches or stone chips, should be touched up without delay using paint.

Suitable **touch-up brushes** or **sprays** for the colour of your vehicle can be purchased from authorised SEAT dealers.

Note

We recommend you leave paint damage repairs to a SEAT Authorised Service.

Plastic parts

Exterior plastic parts will come clean using a damp cloth. If this is not sufficient, plastic parts can also be treated with special solvent-free **plastic cleaning detergents**.

Do not use paint cleaners, polishes or wax on plastic parts.

Windows and mirrors

Remove snow and ice from windows and rear vision mirrors with a plastic scraper only. To avoid damaging the surface of the glass, the scraper should only be pushed in one direction and not moved to and fro.

The windows should also be cleaned on the inside at regular intervals.

Use a separate cloth or chamois to dry the windows and rear vision mirrors.

Do not use the chamois used to polish the bodywork to dry the windows. Waxing and polishing residues could cause smears on the glass and hinder visibility.

CAUTION

- **Never use hot or boiling water to remove snow and ice from the windows. Risk of cracking glass!**
- **Make sure you do not damage the paintwork on the vehicle on removing snow and ice from the windows and rear vision mirrors.**
- **Do not remove the snow or ice dirty with thick particles, e.g. gravel, sand or road salt, from windows and mirrors. Risk of damage to the glass and mirror surfaces.**

Headlights

Use soap and clean, hot water to clean the front headlights.

CAUTION

- **Never rub the headlights to dry them and do not use sharp objects to clean the plastic glass material. These could damage the protective paint and cause the headlights to crack.**
- **Do not use aggressive cleaning products or chemical solvents to clean the glass. This could damage the headlights.**

Caring for rubber seals

The weatherstrips on doors and windows will remain pliable and last longer if they are occasionally treated with a suitable rubber care product. This will prevent premature ageing and leaks. If they are properly cared for, the seals will be less likely to freeze up in the winter.

Door lock cylinder

Special products must be used to defrost lock cylinders.

Note

- **Make sure, when washing the vehicle, that the least amount of water possible enters the lock cylinders.**
- **We recommend the use of products from the selection of SEAT Original Accessories to care for the door lock cylinder.**

Wheels

Wheel trims

If you wash the vehicle regularly, you should also thoroughly wash the wheel trim. Regularly remove any brake dust and road salt from the wheels, otherwise the wheel material could be damaged. Repair any damage to the wheel paintwork immediately.

Alloy wheels

After thorough washing, treat the wheels with a protective product for alloy wheels. Do not use abrasive products to care for the wheels.

⚠ WARNING

Moisture, ice and road salt may affect braking efficiency. Risk of accident!

CAUTION

Heavy dirt on the wheels could lead to their misalignment. This could result in vibrations being transmitted to the steering wheel that under certain conditions may cause premature steering wear. This dirt must be removed.

Note

We recommend you leave paint damage repairs to a SEAT Authorised Service.

Vehicle underbody protection

The underside of the vehicle is coated to permanently protect it from chemical and mechanical agents.

Given that damage to the **protective coating** during driving cannot be completely ruled out, we recommend you check the condition of the protective coating on the underbody and suspension at regular intervals, preferably before the start and end of the coldest season of the year.

Authorised SEAT dealers have suitable **special products** and the necessary facilities and are aware of the techniques required for their application. We therefore recommend all touch-up work or additional anti-corrosion measures be performed by an authorised SEAT dealer.

⚠ WARNING

Do not apply underseal or anti-corrosion coatings to the exhaust pipes, catalytic converter, particulate filter or heat shields on the exhaust system. Once the engine has reached operating temperature, these substances could catch fire. Risk of fire!

Cavity waxing

All cavities on the vehicle exposed to corrosion are permanently factory-protected by a **wax solution**.

This wax solution does not need to be checked or touched up. Should wax run out of the cavities at high ambient temperatures, remove it using a plastic scraper and clean away any stains using lighter fluid.

⚠ WARNING

Note the regulations concerning safety and environmental protection if you use lighter fluid to remove the wax. Risk of fire!

Leatherette and upholstery

Leatherette can be cleaned with a damp cloth. If this is not sufficient, these parts should only be cleaned with **solvent-free plastic care and cleaning products**.

Textile covers and trim parts on doors, boot lid, etc. can be cleaned with special detergents, e.g. dry foam. A soft sponge or brush or a micro-fibre cloth for normal cleaning can be used. Use special products to clean the headliner.

»

The dye used in many garments, for example dark jeans, is not always sufficiently colourfast. Seat upholstery (fabric and leather), especially when light-coloured, may visibly discolour if the dye comes out of clothing, even in normal conditions. This is not an upholstery defect but indicates that the dye in the item of clothing is not solid enough.

Heated seat upholstery

Do not clean the seat upholstery with **damp products**, as this could damage the seat heating system.

Clean the upholstery with special products, e.g. dry foam, etc.

Natural leather

Leather should be looked after from time to time, depending on its use.

Normal cleaning

Moisten a cotton or woollen cloth with water and wipe over the leather surfaces.

More stubborn dirt

Do not let water soak through the leather or penetrate the seams.

Dry it with a soft, dry cloth.

Removing stains

Remove fresh **water-based** stains such as coffee, tea, juices, blood, etc. with an absorbent cloth or kitchen roll. Use the special detergent to clean dried-on stains.

Remove fresh **fat-based** stains such as butter, mayonnaise, chocolate, etc. with an absorbent cloth or paper towel or use the special detergent if the stain has not yet soaked through the surface.

Use a grease-dissolving product to treat **dried-in, fat-based stains**.

Treat **less common stains** such as ball-pen and other inks, felt-tip pens, nail polish, emulsion paint, shoe cream etc. with a special leather stain remover.

Leather care

The leather should be treated regularly (about twice a year) with a leather-care product.

Apply the protective product very sparingly.

Dry the leather with a soft, dry cloth.

CAUTION

- **Avoid exposing leather to direct sunlight for long periods so that it does not lose its colour. If the car is left for a prolonged period outdoors, cover the leather so that it does not lose its colour.**
- **Sharp-edged objects on clothing, such as zips, rivets or belts can leave permanent scratches and rough marks on the surface of the leather.**
- **Use of a mechanical steering wheel lock can damage the leather surface of the steering wheel.**

Note

- **Use a suitable impregnating cream with ultra-violet protection at regular intervals and after cleaning. The cream will nourish and moisturise the leather, keep it supple and able to breathe. In addition, it will also help to protect the surface of the leather.**
- **Clean the leather every 2 to 3 months and remove fresh dirt as necessary.**
- **Preserve the colour of the leather. A special coloured cream for leather will renew the colour of more heavily worn areas as required.**
- **Leather is a natural material with specific properties. During vehicle use, the appearance of parts of the leather covers may change; folds or wrinkles may appear as a result of their use.**

Seat belts

Keep the seat belts clean!

Wash soiled seat belts with mild, soapy water, removing any heavier dirt with a soft brush.

Check the condition of all seat belts at regular intervals.

Very soiled belts may not retract properly.

⚠ WARNING

- **The seat belts should never be removed from the vehicle for cleaning.**
- **Never clean using chemical products, as chemical detergents destroy the fabric. Ensure that the seat belts do not come into contact with corrosive fluids such as acids, etc.**
- **If you find any damage to the belt webbing, belt fittings, the belt retractor or the buckle, the belt in question must be replaced by an Official Service.**
- **Make sure that the inertia reel seat belts are completely dry before allowing them to retract.**

Checking and refilling levels

Fuel

Refuelling

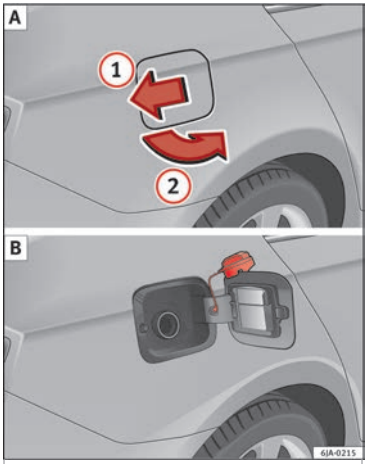


Fig. 203 Vehicle as seen from the rear right: fuel tank flap/fuel tank flap with tank unscrewed cap attached.

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 39

The correct type of fuel for your vehicle is indicated on a sticker on the inside of the fuel tank flap, along with the tyre size and pressure ››› **Fig. 203** B.

Vehicles with a fuel cap with key

– Press the flap in the direction of the arrow (1) ››› **Fig. 203**.

– Open the cover in the direction indicated by the arrow (2).

– Hold onto the fuel tank cap with one hand and unlock it using the ignition key, turning it anti-clockwise.

– Unscrew the tank cap anti-clockwise and place it on top of the tank flap ››› **Fig. 203** B.

– Insert the pump nozzle into the fuel feed tube as far as it will go.

The fuel tank is full as soon as the automatic filler nozzle cuts out ››› ❗.

– Remove the pump nozzle from the fuel feed tube and place it back on the pump.

– Screw the tank cap clockwise until it clicks into place.

– Hold onto the fuel tank cap with one hand and lock it using the ignition key, turning it clockwise.

– Press the tank flap with your hand to close it. »

– Check that the fuel flap is correctly closed.

Vehicles with a keyless fuel cap (the side flap will unlock using the central locking system)

– Once the vehicle has been unlocked using the central locking button, press the fuel flap in the direction of the arrow (1) ››› Fig. 203.

– Open the cover in the direction indicated by the arrow (2).

– Unscrew the tank cap anti-clockwise and place it on top of the tank flap ››› Fig. 203 B.

– Insert the pump nozzle into the fuel feed tube as far as it will go.

The fuel tank is full as soon as the automatic filler nozzle cuts out ››› ❶.

– Remove the pump nozzle from the fuel feed tube and place it back on the pump.

– Screw the tank cap clockwise until it clicks into place.

– Close the tank flap. Make sure you hear it click into place.

– Check that the fuel flap is properly closed.

⚠ WARNING

Observe all relevant statutory regulations on transporting spare fuel canisters. For safety reasons, we do not recommend carrying a spare canister in the vehicle. The canister could be damaged in an accident and fuel may leak. Risk of fire!

ⓘ CAUTION

- **Switch off the auxiliary heater (heater and independent heater) before filling the tank.**
- **The fuel tank is full as soon as the automatic filler nozzle cuts out. Do not continue filling, as this will fill the expansion chamber.**
- **Never completely empty the tank! An irregular fuel supply can cause ignition faults, which can result in damage to a substantial amount of engine parts and the exhaust system.**
- **If any fuel is spilt onto the paintwork of the vehicle, it should be removed immediately. Risk of damage to paintwork!**

Note

There is no emergency mechanism for the manual release of the fuel tank flap. If necessary, request assistance from specialised personnel.

Note

The fuel tank capacity is around 55 litres, of which 7 litres are the reserve.

Types of petrol

The correct grade of petrol is listed inside the fuel tank flap.

The vehicle is equipped with a catalytic converter and must only be run on **unleaded petrol**. The petrol must comply with European Standard EN 228 or German standard DIN 51626-1 and must be **unleaded**. You can refuel with a maximum ethanol proportion of 10 % (E10). The types of petrol are differentiated by their **octane rating (RON)**.

The following titles appear on the corresponding adhesive on the fuel tank flap:

Super unleaded 95 octane or normal 91 octane unleaded petrol

We recommend you use super 95 octane petrol. If this is not available: normal 91 octane petrol, with a slight decrease in power.

Super unleaded petrol with a minimum of 95 octanes

You should use super petrol with a minimum of 95 octanes.

If super is not available, *in an emergency* you may refuel with normal 91 octane petrol. In this case only use moderate engine speeds and a light throttle. Refuel with super as soon as possible.

Super unleaded 98 octane or super 95 octane unleaded petrol

We recommend you use super plus 98 octane petrol. If this is not available: super 95 octane petrol, with a slight decrease in power.

If super is not available, *in an emergency* you may refuel with normal 91 octane petrol. In this case only use moderate engine speeds and a light throttle. Refuel with super as soon as possible.

Petrol additives

The quality of the fuel influences the behaviour, power and service life of the engine. This is why the petrol you use should carry suitable additives already included by the petrol industry, free of metals. These additives will help to prevent corrosion, keep the fuel system clean and prevent deposits from building up in the engine.

If good-quality petrol with metal-free additives is not available or engine problems arise, the necessary additives must be added when refuelling ››› ❗.

Not all petrol additives have been shown to be effective. The use of unsuitable petrol additives may cause significant damage to the engine and the catalytic converter. Metal additives should never be used. Metal additives may also be contained in petrol additives for improving anti-detonation ratings or octane ratings ››› ❗.

SEAT recommends “genuine Volkswagen Group Fuel Additives for petrol engines”. These additives can be bought at SEAT dealers, where information on how to use them can also be obtained.

CAUTION

- **Do not refuel if the filler indicates that the fuel contains metal. LRP (*lead replacement petrol*) fuels contain high concentrations of metal additives. Using them may damage the engine!**
- **Never refuel with fuels containing a large proportion of ethanol (for example, E50, E85). This could damage the fuel system.**
- **Just filling one full tank of leaded fuel or fuel containing other metal additives would seriously impair the efficiency of the catalytic converter.**
- **Only use fuel additives that have been approved by SEAT. Octane boosting or anti-knock additives may contain metal additives that could seriously damage the engine or the catalytic converter. These additives must not be used.**
- **High engine speed and full throttle can damage the engine when using petrol with an octane rating lower than the correct grade for the engine.**

Note

- **You may use petrol with a high octane number than the one recommended for your engine.**
- **In those countries where unleaded petrol is not available, you may refuel with a fuel with a low lead content.**

Diesel fuel

Please note the information on the inside of the fuel tank flap.

We recommend the use of **diesel** fuel which complies to European standard EN 590. If diesel fuel which meets European standard EN 590 is not available, the Cetane number (CZ) must, at minimum, be 51. If the engine is equipped with a particulate filter, the sulphur content of the fuel must be below 50 parts per million.

Winter-grade diesel

Summer fuel becomes thicker in winter and it is more difficult to start the engine. For this reason, petrol stations in some countries also offer winter diesel with improved fluidity when cold (winter-grade diesel). »

Water in the fuel filter[1)]

If your vehicle has a diesel engine and is equipped with a **fuel filter with a water separator**, the instrument panel may display the following warning: `Water in the fuel filter.` If this is the case, take the vehicle to a specialised workshop so that they can drain the fuel filter.

CAUTION

- **The vehicle is not designed for the use of FAME fuel (biodiesel). The fuel system would be damaged if you used biodiesel.**
- **Do not mix fuel additives, the so-called "thinners", petrol or similar additives with diesel fuel.**
- **If poor-quality diesel fuel is used, it may be necessary to drain the fuel filter more frequently than is specified in the Maintenance Programme. We recommend having this done by a specialised workshop. If water is allowed to collect in the filter, this can cause engine performance problems.**

Engine compartment

Introduction

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 11

Always be aware of the danger of injury and scalding as well as the risk of accident or fire when working in the engine compartment, e.g. when checking and refilling fluids. Therefore, always observe the warnings and follow all general safety precautions. The engine compartment is a dangerous area.

WARNING

- **Never open the bonnet if you see steam, smoke or coolant escaping from the engine compartment. Risk of scalding! Wait until no steam or coolant can be seen before opening the bonnet.**
- **Switch off the engine and remove the key from the ignition.**
- **Engage neutral in vehicles with manual gearbox and move the selector lever to position P in vehicles with automatic gearbox.**
- **Apply the handbrake firmly.**
- **Wait for the engine to cool down.**
- **For safety reasons, the bonnet must always be closed when the vehicle is moving. Therefore, after closing the bonnet always check that it is properly secured.**
- **Should you notice that the bonnet is not safely secured when the vehicle is moving, stop the vehicle immediately and close the bonnet properly. Risk of accident!**
- **Keep children away from the engine compartment.**
- **Do not touch hot engine parts. Risk of burns!**
- **Never spill fluids on hot engine compartments. These fluids can cause a fire (e.g. antifreeze in coolant)!**
- **Take care not to cause short circuits in the electrical system, especially when working on the battery.**
- **Never touch the radiator fan when the engine is hot. The fan may start running suddenly!**
- **Never cover the engine with additional insulating materials such as a blanket. Risk of fire!**
- **Do not unscrew the cap on the coolant expansion tank when the engine is hot. The cooling system is under pressure!**
- **Protect face, hands and arms from any hot steam or hot coolant released by covering the cap with a large, thick rag when opening the expansion tank.**
- **Do not leave any objects, such as cloths or tools, in the engine compartment.**

[1)] Valid for the market: Algeria.

- When working underneath the vehicle, secure it so that it cannot roll away and support it safely on suitable supports. The hydraulic jack is not sufficient for this purpose. Risk of injuries!
- If any tests have to be performed with the engine running, there is an extra safety risk from rotating parts, such as the drive belt, alternator and radiator fan, etc., and from the high-voltage ignition system. You should also note the following:
  - Never touch the electrical wiring of the ignition system.
  - Keep away from moving engine parts when wearing jewellery, loose clothing or long hair. Risk of fatal injuries! All jewellery must be removed, hair tied back and close-fitting clothing worn.
- Observe the following additional warnings if work on the fuel system or the electrical system is necessary.
  - Always disconnect the battery from the on-board network.
  - Do not smoke.
  - Never work near naked flames.
  - Always keep an approved fire extinguisher immediately available.

CAUTION

- When topping up fluids, make sure the correct fluid is put into the correct filler opening. Otherwise this can cause serious malfunctions or engine damage!
- Never open the bonnet using the release catch. Risk of damage!

For the sake of the environment

Due to the environmentally-friendly disposal of fluids, the equipment necessary and the knowledge required, let an authorised SEAT dealer change fluids during service inspections of the vehicle.

Note

- Please contact an authorised SEAT dealer with any doubts regarding fluids.
- Fluids of the correct specifications can be acquired from the selection of SEAT Original Accessories.

Opening and closing the bonnet

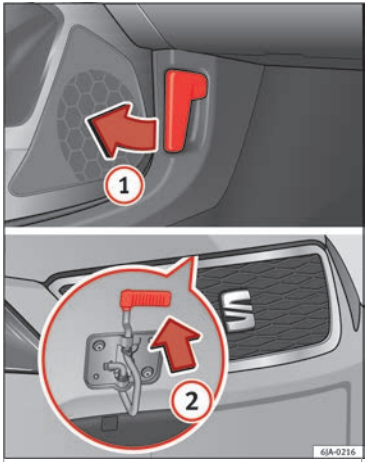


Fig. 204 Unlocking the bonnet.

»

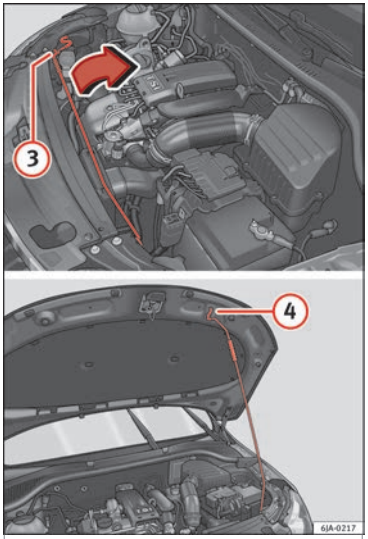


Fig. 205 Locking the bonnet.

Opening the bonnet

– Open the front left door.

– Pull the lever (1) ››› **Fig. 204** under the dash panel in the direction indicated by the arrow.

Before opening the bonnet, make sure that the windscreen wiper arms are not lifted away from the glass. Otherwise the paintwork may be damaged.

– Pull the release catch in the direction of the arrow (2) ››› **Fig. 204** and the bonnet will be released.

– Hold and lift the bonnet.

– Remove the support strut (3) ››› **Fig. 205** from its fastening in the direction of the arrow and secure the raised bonnet so that the end of the strut hooks onto the opening in the bonnet (4).

Closing the bonnet

– Lift the bonnet slightly and unhook the support strut keeping the bonnet open and insert it into its fastening (3).

– Let the bonnet drop from a height of around 20 cm into the catch **Do not press down afterwards!**

– Check that the bonnet is correctly closed.

Checking levels

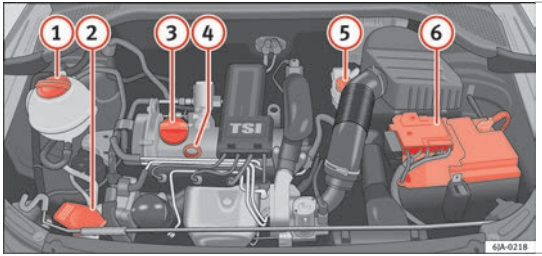


Fig. 206 Diagram for the location of the various elements.

From time to time, the levels of the different fluids in the vehicle must be checked. Never fill with incorrect fluids, otherwise serious damage to the engine may be caused.

1. Coolant expansion tank 208
2. Window washer water tank 210
3. Engine oil filler cap 207
4. Engine oil level dipstick 207
5. Brake fluid reservoir 209
6. Battery 211

The checking and replenishment of the service fluids are carried out on the components mentioned above. These operations are described in the »» page 202.

Overview

You will find further explanations, instructions and restrictions on the technical specifications as of »» page 221.

> **Note**
>
> **The layout of the engine compartment is very similar to all petrol and diesel engines.**

Radiator fan

The radiator is driven by an electric motor and controlled according to the temperature of the coolant.

After the engine has been stopped and the ignition switched off, the radiator fan may continue running for around 10 minutes.

Engine oil

General notes

The engine comes with a special, multi-grade oil that can be used all year round.

Because the use of high-quality oil is essential for the correct operation of the engine and its long useful life, when topping up or changing oil, use only those oils that comply with VW standards.

The specifications (VW standards) set out in the following page should appear on the container of the service oil; when the container displays the specific standards for petrol and diesel engines together, it means that the oil can be used for both types of engines.

We recommend that the oil change indicated in the Maintenance Programme, be »

performed by a technical service or specialised workshop.

The correct oil specifications for your engine are listed in the ››› page 40.

Service intervals

Service intervals can be flexible (LongLife service) or fixed (dependent on time/distance travelled).

If the PR code that appears on the back of the Maintenance Programme booklet is PR QI6, this means that your vehicle has the LongLife service programmed. If it lists the codes QI1, QI2, QI3, QI4 or QI7, the interval service is dependent on time/distance travelled.

Flexible service intervals (LongLife service intervals*)

Special oils and processes have been developed which, depending on the characteristics and individual driving profiles, enable the extension of the oil change service (LongLife service intervals).

Because this oil is essential for extending the service intervals, it **must only** be used observing the following indications:

- Avoid mixing it with oil for fixed service intervals.
- Only in exceptional circumstances, if the engine oil level is too low ››› page 207 and LongLife oil is not available, it is permitted to top up (once) with oil for **fixed service intervals** ››› page 40 (up to a maximum of 0.5 litres).

Fixed service intervals*

If your vehicle does not have the “LongLife service interval” or it has been disabled (by request), you may use oils for **fixed service intervals**, which also appear in ››› page 40. In this case, your vehicle must be serviced after a fixed interval of 1 year/15,000 km (10,000 miles)(whatever comes first) ››› Booklet Maintenance Programme.

- In exceptional circumstances, if the engine oil level is too low ››› page 207 and you cannot obtain the oil specified for your vehicle, you can add a small quantity of oil conforming to the specification ACEA A2 or ACEA A3 (petrol engines) or ACEA B3 or ACEA B4 (diesel engines) (up to 0.5 l).

Vehicles with diesel particulate filter*

The Maintenance Programme states whether your vehicle is fitted with a diesel particulate filter.

Only VW 507 00 engine oil, with reduced ash formation, may be used in diesel engines equipped with particulate filter. Using other types of oil will cause a higher soot concentration and reduce the life of the DPF. Therefore:

- Avoid mixing this oil with other engine oils.
- Only in exceptional circumstances, if the engine oil level is too low ››› page 207 and you cannot obtain the oil specified for your vehicle, you can use a small quantity of oil (once) conforming to the VW 506 00, VW 506 01, VW 505 00, VW 505 01 or ACEA B3/ACEA B4 specification. (up to 0.5 l).

Note

Before a long trip, we recommend finding an engine oil that conforms to the corresponding VW specifications and recommend keeping it in the vehicle. This way, the correct engine oil will always be available for a top-up if needed.

Control lamp

The control lamp flashes red (oil pressure low)

The informative display indicates:

`Oil pressure. Switch off the engine! Instruction Manual!`

Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine and check the engine oil level ››› page 207

If the symbol flashes although the oil level is correct, **do not drive on**. Do not even run the engine at idle speed!

Go to a technical service.

The control lamp lights up yellow (insufficient oil level)

The informative display indicates:

`Check the oil level!`

Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine and check the engine oil level ››› page 207

If the bonnet remains open for more than 30 seconds, the warning lamp switches off. If the engine oil is not refilled, the warning lamp illuminates again after 100 km (62 miles).

The control lamp flashes yellow (oil level sensor faulty)

The informative display indicates:

`Oil sensor. Workshop!`

If the engine oil level sensor is faulty, The warning lamp flashes various times after the ignition is switched on and an audible warning is given.

Go to a technical service.

Checking engine oil level

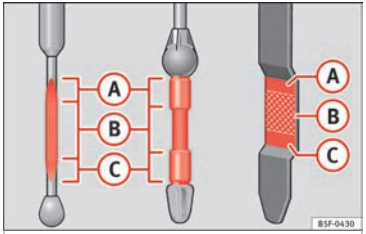


Fig. 207 Engine oil dipsticks.

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 40

The dipstick shows the engine oil level. ››› Fig. 207.

Checking oil level

– Park the vehicle on a level surface and ensure the engine is at operating temperature.

– Switch the ignition off.

– Open the bonnet.

– Wait a few minutes for the engine oil to flow back to the sump and remove the dipstick.

– Wipe the dipstick with a clean cloth and insert it again as far as it will go.

– Then pull the dipstick out again and check the oil level.

It is normal for the engine to consume a certain amount of oil. Depending on how you drive and the conditions in which the vehicle is used, oil consumption can be up to 0.5 litres per 1,000 km. Oil consumption can also be higher for the first 5,000 km (3000 miles).

You should therefore check the oil level at regular intervals, ideally every time you fill the tank or before setting off on a long trip.

CAUTION

- **The oil level must never exceed area A ››› Fig. 207. Risk of damage to the exhaust system!**
- **If the engine oil cannot be topped up under the given conditions, do not drive on! Stop the engine and seek the professional assistance of an Official Service, as this could cause serious damage to the engine.**

Topping up engine oil

– Check the engine oil level ››› page 207, Checking engine oil level.

– Unscrew the cap from the filler opening.

– Put in the specified grade of oil 0.5 litres at a time ››› page 205.

– Check the oil level ››› page 207.

»

– Replace the oil filler cap carefully and push the dipstick all the way in.

Changing engine oil

Engine oil must be changed with the frequency indicated in the Maintenance Programme or according to the service interval indicator ››› page 30.

CAUTION

Do not mix engine oil with additives. Risk of damage to the engine! Damage caused by these products is not covered by the warranty.

Note

Wash your skin thoroughly if it comes into contact with engine oil.

Coolant

Control lamp

If the warning lamp (blue) is lit up, the engine has not yet reached its operating temperature[1]. Avoid high engine speeds, hard acceleration and subjecting the engine to high loads.

If the warning lamp (red) is lit up or flashing, the coolant temperature is too high or its level is too low.

The informative display indicates:

Check coolant! Instruction Manual!

Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, check the coolant level ››› page 208 and refill if necessary ››› page 209.

If the coolant is situated in the prescribed area, the high temperature may be due to a fault in the cooling system fan. Check the radiator fan fuse and replace it if necessary ››› page 43.

If the warning lamp (red) remains lit up, despite both the coolant level and the radiator fan fuse being in correct condition, **stop the vehicle!**

Go to a technical service.

WARNING

- **Take care when opening the coolant reservoir. When the engine is warm or hot, the system is pressurised – Danger of burns!**

Wait for the engine to cool before opening the cover.

- **Do not touch the fan. The fan can switch on automatically regardless of whether the ignition is switched on.**

Checking coolant level

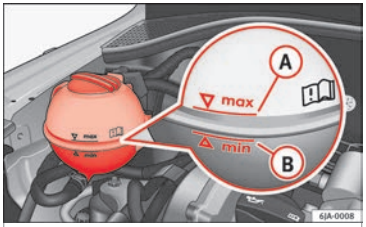


Fig. 208 Engine compartment: coolant fluid tank.

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 40

The coolant expansion tank is located in the engine compartment of the vehicle.

– Switch the ignition off.

– Open the bonnet ››› page 202.

[1] This does not apply to vehicles equipped with an informative display.

– Read off the coolant level on coolant expansion tank ››› Fig. 208. When the engine is cold, the coolant should be between marks (B) (min.) and (A) (max.). When the engine is hot, it may be slightly above mark (A) (max.).

If the coolant fluid level in the reservoir is too low, this will be indicated by the red warning lamp illuminating on the general dash panel ››› page 208, Control lamp. However, we recommend checking the coolant level directly in the tank.

Coolant fluid loss

Any loss of coolant normally indicates a **leak**. It is not sufficient merely to top up the coolant. The cooling system should be inspected by an Official Service without delay.

CAUTION

- **In the event of a fault that causes the engine to overheat, contact an authorised SEAT dealer immediately, as this could damage the engine.**
- **Anti-freeze that does not correspond to the correct specification may particularly affect corrosion protection considerably.**
- **Faults caused by corrosion may lead to coolant leaks. Risk of serious engine faults!**

Topping up the coolant level

– Switch the ignition off.

– Wait for the engine to cool down.

– Cover the cap on the coolant expansion tank ››› Fig. 208 with a cloth and **carefully** unscrew the cap.

– Refill the level of coolant.

– Screw the cap on again until it clicks into place.

Do not use a different type of additive if the prescribed anti-freeze additive is not available, in the event of an emergency. In this case, use only water and bring the coolant concentration back up to the correct level as soon as possible at an Official Service.

Always top up with unused coolant.

Never fill the coolant tank above mark (A) (max.) ››› Fig. 208 Excess coolant is forced out of the cooling system through the overpressure valve in the filler cap of the expansion tank when the engine heats up.

WARNING

- **The anti-freeze additive and, therefore, the entire coolant, are a health hazard. Avoid touching the coolant. Coolant fumes are also a health hazard. For this reason, always store the coolant additive in a safe place out of the reach of children. Risk of poisoning!**
- **If splashed into eyes, rinse immediately with clean water and seek immediate medical attention.**
- **Seek immediate medical attention if the coolant is accidentally ingested.**

CAUTION

If the coolant cannot be topped up under the given conditions, do not drive on. We recommend contacting an authorised SEAT dealer, as this can damage the engine.

Brake fluid

Checking brake fluid level

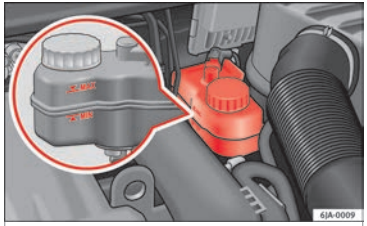


Fig. 209 Engine compartment: brake fluid reservoir.

Read the additional information carefully
››› page 41

The brake fluid reservoir is located in the engine compartment of the vehicle.

– Switch the ignition off.

– Open the bonnet ››› page 202.

– Check the brake fluid level in the reservoir ››› Fig. 209. It should be between the “MIN” and “MAX” marks.

The fluid level drops slightly after a period of time due to automatic compensation for brake pad wear. This is quite normal.

However, if the level goes down noticeably in a short time, or drops below the “MIN” mark, there may be a leak in the brake system. If the brake fluid level in the reservoir is too low, this will be indicated by the warning lamp illuminating in the instrument panel ››› page 153, Control lamp.

WARNING

- **If the fluid level has dropped below the MIN mark, do not continue driving. Risk of accident! Go to a technical service.**
- **Heavy use of the brakes may cause a vapour lock if the brake fluid is left in the brake system for too long. This would seriously affect the efficiency of the brakes and the safety of the vehicle.**

Changing the brake fluid

Brake fluid absorbs moisture. Therefore, it gradually absorbs moisture from the atmosphere. If the water content in the brake fluid is too high, the brake system could corrode. The water content also reduces the boiling point of the brake fluid.

The brake fluid must comply with one of the following standards or specifications:

- VW 50114
- FMVSS 116 DOT4

CAUTION

Brake fluid damages the vehicle paintwork.

Windscreen washer

Topping up windscreen washer fluid

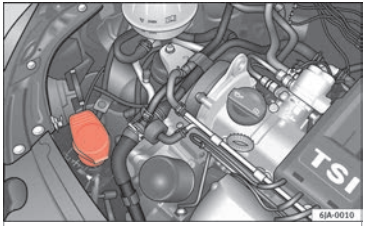


Fig. 210 Engine compartment: windscreen washer reservoir.

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 41

The container for the windscreen washer contains the cleaning fluid for the windscreen or rear window and the headlight washer system. The container is located in the engine compartment.

The **capacity** of the reservoir is approximately 3.5 litres; in vehicles with a headlight washer system, it is approximately 5.4 litres[1].

Plain water on its own is not enough to clean the glass and the headlights properly. We

[1] Valid only for certain countries. 5.4 litres for both versions.

therefore recommend using clean water with a glass cleaning product to eliminate any stubborn dirt **(with an anti-freeze additive in winter)**.

Although your vehicle has heated windscreen washer jets, anti-freeze should always be added to the water in winter.

Ethanol can be used where glass cleaner with anti-freeze is unavailable. The concentration of ethanol must be no greater than 15 %. However, remember that anti-freeze in this proportion only protects down to -5°C (+23°F).

CAUTION

- **Never mix the windscreen washing water with anti-freeze used for the cooling system or other additives.**
- **If the vehicle is equipped with a headlight washer system, only mix in with the water a detergent that does not damage polycarbonates.**

Note

When topping up the fluid, do not move the filter from the container opening, as this could contaminate the fluid hoses and lead to a windscreen washer malfunction.

Battery

Introduction

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 41.

Warning symbols on the battery

Symbol	Meaning
	Always wear safety glasses!
	Battery acid is extremely corrosive. Always wear gloves and hearing protection!
	Keep open flames, sparks, uncovered lights and lit cigarettes away when working on the battery!
	A highly explosive mixture of gases is released when the battery is under charge!
	Keep children away from the battery!

Incorrect handling of the vehicle battery could lead to damage. We therefore recommend all work on the vehicle battery be performed by an authorised SEAT dealer.

Always be aware of the danger of injury and scalding as well as the risk of accident or fire when working on the battery and the electrical system. Therefore, always observe the warnings and follow all general safety precautions.

WARNING

- **Battery acid is very corrosive, therefore, the battery must be handled with the utmost care. Wear protective gloves and protect your eyes and skin when handling batteries. The corrosive fumes in the air irritate and inflame the respiratory tract and cause conjunctivitis. It corrodes tooth enamel. Causes deep and difficult-to-heal wounds when it comes in contact with the skin. Repeated contact with diluted acids causes skin disease (inflammation, ulcers and fissures). When in contact with water, acids dilute and develop a great deal of heat.**
- **Do not tilt the battery, as acid could leak out of the vapour vents. Protect your eyes with glasses or a protective helmet! Risk of blindness! If acid should splash into the eyes, rinse the affected eye immediately for several minutes using clean water. Then seek medical care immediately.**
- **Neutralize any acid splashes on the skin or clothing with soap solution as quickly as possible and rinse off with plenty of water. If acid is swallowed by mistake, consult a doctor immediately.**
- **Keep children away from the battery.**
- **Hydrogen is released and a highly explosive mixture of gases is generated when the battery is under charge. Sparks when disconnecting or releasing cable terminals with the ignition switched on could also cause an explosion.**

»

- **A short circuit is produced if the battery terminals are bridged, e.g. using metal objects, cables, etc. Possible consequences of a short circuit: melting of lead plates, battery explosion and fire, splashing acid.**
- **The following is forbidden while working on the battery: fire and open flames, smoking and activities that could produce sparks. Avoid causing sparks when handling cables or electrical apparatus. Risk of injury in the event of large sparks.**
- **Before working on the electrical system, you must switch off the engine, the ignition and all electrical components and disconnect the cable from the negative terminal (-) of the battery. To change a bulb, simply switch off the corresponding light.**
- **Never charge a frozen or thawed out battery. Risk of explosion and acid burns! Replace a frozen battery.**
- **Never use the jump leads on batteries in which the electrolyte level is too low. Risk of explosion and acid burns!**
- **Never use a damaged battery. Risk of explosion! Replace a damaged battery immediately.**

CAUTION

- **Never disconnect the battery when the ignition is switched on, as the electrical system (electronic components) of the vehicle could be damaged. When disconnecting the battery from the vehicle electrical system, disconnect its negative terminal (-) first. Only then may the positive terminal (+) be disconnected.**
- **When connecting the battery, first connect the positive terminal (+) and then the negative terminal (-). The battery cables must never be connected to the wrong battery terminals. Risk of burning the electrical installation!**
- **Make sure the battery acid does not come into contact with the bodywork. Risk of paintwork damage.**
- **Do not expose the battery to direct sunlight to protect it from ultraviolet radiation.**
- **If the vehicle is not used for 3 or 4 weeks, the battery could run flat. This is because some components use electricity even in standby mode (e.g. control units). Prevent the battery from running flat by disconnecting its negative terminal or leave it charging at a low current.**
- **If you frequently use the vehicle for short trips, the battery may not fully charge and could run flat.**

For the sake of the environment

A flat battery is particularly harmful waste for the environment. It must therefore be disposed of according to current local law.

Note

Replace a battery once it is older than 5 years.

Control lamp

If the control lamp is illuminated while the engine is running, the battery is not charging.

Go to a technical service. Have the car's electrical equipment inspected.

CAUTION

Additionally, if the warning lamp lights up while driving, the warning lamp also lights up (cooling system fault). Stop the vehicle and switch off the engine – Risk of engine damage!

Lifting the battery cover

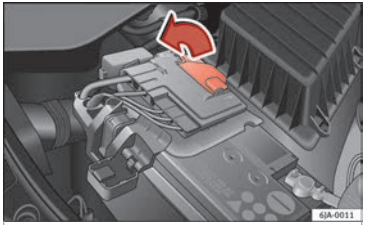


Fig. 211 Battery: Opening the cover.

The battery is located beneath a plastic cover in the engine compartment.

– Open the battery cover in the direction indicated by the arrow ››› Fig. 211.

– The positive terminal (+) of the battery is connected in reverse order.

Checking the battery electrolyte level

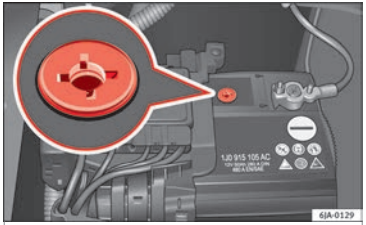


Fig. 212 Battery: Electrolyte level indicator.

We recommend you have the acid level regularly checked at an official technical service, particularly in the following cases.

- At high outside temperatures.
- On long daily trips.
- Whenever the vehicle is loaded ››› page 213, Charging the battery.

In vehicles equipped with a battery with colour indicator, the so-called magic eye ››› Fig. 212 changes colour to indicate the acid level.

Air bubbles can influence the colour of the indicator. Therefore, carefully knock the indicator before checking the acid level.

- Black – the acid level is correct.
- Colourless or light yellow – acid level too low, battery must be changed.

Note

- **The battery acid level is also regularly checked during servicing at authorised SEAT dealers.**
- **The electrolyte level on “AGM” batteries cannot be checked for technical reasons.**
- **Vehicles equipped with the “Start-Stop” system include a battery control unit to control the battery level for repeated engine starting.**

Winter service

At low temperatures the battery provides only a fraction of the starting power it has at normal temperatures.

A flat battery can also freeze at temperatures slightly below to 0°C (32°F).

We therefore recommend you have the battery checked and, if necessary, charged at an official SEAT technical service before the start of winter.

Charging the battery

A fully-charged battery is essential for reliable starting.

– Switch off the ignition and all electrical equipment.

– For “fast-charging” only: disconnect both battery connection cables (first the “negative” terminal and then the “positive”).

– Connect the charger cables to the battery terminals (red = “positive”, black = “negative”).

– Plug in the battery charger and switch on.

– After charging the battery: Switch off the battery charger and disconnect the cable.

– Remove the charger cables.

– If necessary, reconnect both battery cables to the battery (first the “positive” cable, then the “negative” cable).

When charging with a low current (e.g. with a **small battery charger**), the battery does not normally have to be disconnected. **The instructions of the battery charger manufacturer must be followed.**

Use a current equivalent to or lower than 10% of the battery capacity to fully charge the battery.

Before **“fast-charging”** the battery however, both battery cables must be disconnected. »

"Fast-charging" a battery is **dangerous** and requires a battery charger and special knowledge. Fast charges should be performed by an official technical service.

The battery caps should not be opened while the battery is being charged.

CAUTION

In vehicles fitted with the "Start-Stop" system, the charger cable cannot be directly connected to the negative terminal of the vehicle battery but must be attached to the engine ground point »» page 52.

Disconnecting and connecting the battery

The following functions will either be inoperative or will not work properly after disconnecting and reconnecting the battery:

Function	Installation
Setting the clock	»» page 95
The multifunction display data is deleted	»» page 97

Note

We recommend having the vehicle checked by an authorised SEAT dealer to guarantee the correct working order of all electrical systems.

Replacing the battery

A replacement battery must have the same capacity, voltage, current rating and size as the original. The appropriate types of battery can be acquired from authorised SEAT dealers.

We recommend having the battery changed by an authorised SEAT dealer, where the new battery will be correctly installed and the original disposed of in line with regulations.

Automatic disconnection of electrical equipment

When heavily-charging a battery, the programme selected by the electrical system control unit prevents the battery from automatically discharging. This may result in the following:

- Increase in idling speed so that the alternator can supply more current to the electrical system.
- The performance of certain electrical components could be limited or some may switch off temporarily, e.g. the heated seats, the heated rear window, the 12 V power socket.

Note

Despite any measures taken by the control unit, the battery could drain. e.g. with the engine is switched off, the key is turned in the ignition for a long period or the side lights or parking lights are switched on. The switching off of certain electrical components does not impair driving comfort and often the driver will not even notice.

Wheels and tyres

Wheels

Introduction

WARNING

- During the first 500 km, new tyres do not give maximum grip, therefore you should drive carefully. Risk of accident!
- Never drive with damaged tyres. Risk of accident!
- Only use wheels and tyres that been authorised by SEAT or your vehicle model. Failure to do so could impair road safety. Risk of accident!
- Never exceed the maximum speed permitted for your tyres. Risk of accident due to tyre damage and loss of vehicle control!
- Under-inflated tyres are submitted to greater rolling resistance. This means that they can overheat at high speeds. This can cause tread separation and even tyre blow-out.
- For driving safety, tyres should be replaced at least in pairs according to the axle and not individually. The tyres with the deepest tread should always be used on the front wheels.
- Never fit used tyres of an unknown age or prior use.
- Tyres must be immediately changed at the very latest when they have worn down to the tread wear indicators.
- Worn tyres reduce the necessary grip at high speeds on damp surfaces. This could lead to “aquaplaning” (uncontrolled vehicle movement –“skidding” on damp surfaces).
- Damaged wheels and tyres must be replaced immediately.
- Do not use summer or winter tyres that are more than 6 or 4 years old respectively.
- Wheel bolts should be clean and screw easily. However, they must never be treated with grease or oil.
- If the tightening torque of the wheel bolts is too low, they could loosen while the vehicle is moving. Risk of accident! If the tightening torque of the wheel bolts is too high, the bolts and threads could be damaged, leading to the permanent deforming of the rim support surfaces.
- Incorrectly handled wheel bolts could lead to a wheel coming loose while the vehicle is moving. Risk of accident!
- Observe the national legal requirements regarding the use of snow tyres and chains.

CAUTION

- Where a spare wheel that is not compatible with the wheels fitted is used, follow the instructions »» page 218.
- The prescribed tightening torque for wheel bolts on steel and alloy wheels is 120 Nm.
- Protect your tyres from coming into contact with oil, grease and fuel.
- Replace any lost valve caps immediately.

For the sake of the environment

Under-inflated tyres increases fuel consumption.

Note

- We recommend having all work on tyres and wheels carried out by an authorised SEAT dealer.
- We recommend using wheels, tyres, hub caps and snow chains from the SEAT Original Accessories programme.

Useful life of tyres

Fig. 213 Side view of tyres with tread wear indicators.

Fig. 214 Location of the tyre pressure sticker.

Tread wear indicator

The base of the side of the original tyres on your vehicle show 1.6 mm high tread wear indicators ››› **Fig. 213**. The position of these indicators is given on the tyre sidewalls by the letters “TWI”, triangular symbols or other symbols.

The useful life of the tyres depends primarily on the following factors:

Tyre pressure values

Under-inflation or over-inflation will considerably reduce the useful life of the tyres and impair the vehicle's handling. Therefore, check the tyre pressure, including the spare wheel, at least once a month and before any long journey.

Inflation pressures for **summer tyres** are listed on a sticker inside the fuel tank flap ››› **Fig. 214**. The pressures for **winter tyres** are 0.2 bar (2.9 psi/20 kPa) above the summer values.

Always check the pressure when the tyre is cold. Do not reduce over-pressure in warm tyres. The tyre pressures must be altered to suit notable changes in the load being carried.

Depending on the vehicle, tyre pressure can be adjusted to medium load to improve driving comfort (“comfort” tyre pressure). When driving with comfort tyre pressure fuel consumption may increase slightly.

Driving style

Fast cornering, heavy acceleration and hard braking all increase tyre wear.

Wheel balancing

The wheels on new vehicles are balanced. Various factors encountered when driving can cause them to become unbalanced, which results in vibration of the steering wheel.

The wheel must be rebalanced if a new tyre is fitted or if a tyre is repaired.

Incorrect wheel alignment

Incorrect front or rear wheel alignment causes excessive tyre wear, frequently on one side, and also impairs vehicle safety. If tyre wear is very irregular, contact an Official Service.

Tyre damage

To avoid damage to tyres and wheels, only drive over kerbs or similar obstacles slowly and at a right angle if possible.

Check tyres and wheels regularly for damage (punctures, cracks, blisters, deformities, etc.). Remove any foreign objects embedded in outside of the treads.

Unusual vibration or the car pulling to one side may indicate that one of the tyres is damaged. **Reduce speed immediately and stop if you suspect that a wheel may have been damaged!** Check the tyres for damage (blisters, cracks, etc.). If no external damage is visible, drive slowly and carefully to the nearest Official Service and have the vehicle inspected.

Changing wheels

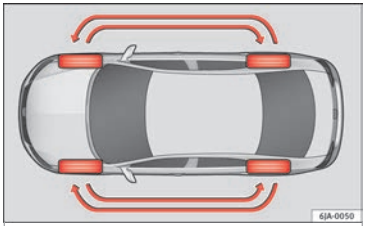


Fig. 215 Interchanging tyres.

Changing wheels around

If the wear is visibly greater on the front tyres, they should be exchanged for the rear tyres as shown in the diagram ››› **Fig. 215**. All the tyres will then last for about the same time.

To ensure that the wear is equal on all tyres and maintain their optimum useful life, they should be changed around every 10 000 km.

Storing tyres

When you remove the tyres, mark them in order to maintain the same direction of rotation when they are installed again.

When removed, the wheels and/or tyres should be stored in a cool, dry and preferably dark location. Store tyres in a vertical position, if they are not fitted on wheel rims.

New tyres or wheels

All four wheels must be fitted only with tyres of the same type, size and the same tread pattern.

The correct tyre/wheel combinations specified for your vehicle are listed in its documentation.

Understanding the tyre designations makes it easier to choose the correct tyres. The tyre designation is marked on the sidewall. For example.

195/55 R 15 85 H

This contains the following information:

195	Tyre width in mm
55	Height/width ratio in %
R	identifying tyre construction letter – **R**adial
15	Rim diameter in inches
85	Load rating code
H	Speed rating code letter

The tyres are subject to the following **maximum speed limits**:

Speed rating code letter	Maximum speed limit
Q	160 km/h (99 mph)
R	170 km/h (106 mph)
S	180 km/h (112 mph)
T	190 km/h (118 mph)
U	200 km/h (124 mph)
H	210 km/h (130 mph)
V	240 km/h (149 mph)
W	270 km/h (168 mph)

The **manufacturing date** is also indicated on the tyre sidewall (possibly only on the *inner* side of the wheel).

DOT ... 27 12...

»

means, for example, that the tyre was produced in the 27th week of 2012.

Follow the instructions ››› page 218 if you only have a temporary spare wheel.

Note

A SEAT Service Centre should be consulted to find out whether wheels or tyres of different sizes to those originally fitted by SEAT can be fitted, and to find out about the combinations allowed between the front axle (axle 1) and the rear axle (axle 2).

Tyres with directional tread pattern

The direction of rotation is indicated by the **arrows on the tyre sidewall**. The direction of rotation indicated must be respected. This guarantees optimum grip and helps avoid excessive noise, wear and aquaplaning.

In the event of a flat tyre, a spare wheel with an undetermined tread pattern or an opposite tread pattern must be used and you must drive carefully, as in these cases the tyres no longer offer maximum performance.

Spare wheel

Spare wheel location*

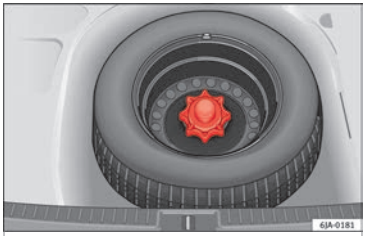


Fig. 216 Luggage compartment: spare wheel.

The spare wheel is housed in a well under the floor panel in the luggage compartment and is secured by a special bolt ››› Fig. 216.

Take out the tool box before removing the spare wheel.

The tyre pressure of the spare wheel must be checked (preferably whenever the tyre pressure is checked – see sticker on fuel tank flap ››› page 216) to ensure the spare wheel remains ready for use.

If the spare wheel is not the same size or design as the tyres that are mounted on the car (for example if the car has winter tyres or tyres with direction tread), only use the spare tyre for a short period of time in the event of breakdown and drive with the corresponding care ››› ⚠.

It must be replaced as soon as possible for a wheel with a normal size and finish.

Temporary spare wheel

If the vehicle is equipped with a temporary spare wheel, there will be a warning sign on the rim of the wheel.

Follow the instructions below when driving with this wheel fitted.

- After fitting the wheel, the warning sign must not be covered.
- Do not drive faster than 80 km/h (50 mph) with the spare wheel and take great care while driving. Avoid heavy acceleration, hard braking and fast cornering.
- The tyre pressure is the same as that of the standard tyres.
- Only use this spare wheel to reach the nearest Official Service, as it is not designed for permanent use.

⚠ WARNING

- **Under no circumstances must damaged spare wheels be used.**
- **If the spare wheel is different in size or design to the tyres currently fitted, never drive faster than 80 km/h (50 mph). Avoid heavy acceleration, hard braking and fast cornering.**

CAUTION

Follow the instructions given on the temporary spare wheel label.

Note

The tyre pressure of the spare wheel must always correspond to the highest pressure prescribed for the model of vehicle in question.

Tyre monitoring systems

Tyre pressure*

The tyre pressure monitoring system uses ABS sensors to compare the revolutions and the circumference of each wheel. Should the circumference of any wheel change, the warning lamp (!) on the general instrument panel will light up and an audible warning will be heard.

Tyre circumference may change if:

- Tyre pressure is too low
- Tyre structure is damaged
- Vehicle load not evenly distributed
- wheels on one axle are subjected to greater load, (e.g. driving with trailer, uphill, downhill);
- Snow chains are fitted
- The temporary spare wheel is fitted
- One wheel on the axle has been changed

Basic system settings

Should the tyre pressure change or if one or more wheels are changed or the position of the wheel on the vehicle is changed, e.g. changing round the front and rear wheels, or where a warning lamp lights up when driving, the system must be adjusted as follows:

- Inflate all tyres to the prescribed pressures ››› page 216.
- Switch the ignition on.
- Store the new tyre pressure in the Easy Connect system with the button CAR and the function button Setup ››› page 21.

The warning lamp (!) lights up

If the pressure on at least one tyre is significantly lower than the pressure set by the driver, the warning lamp (!) will light up ››› ⚠.

The warning lamp (!) flashes

If the warning lamp flashes, there is a fault in the system. Contact a specialised service to have it fixed.

WARNING

- **If the warning lamp (!) lights up, slow down immediately and avoid any severe braking or steering manoeuvres. Stop and check the tyres and their pressure as soon as possible.**
- **Under certain conditions (e.g. sporty driving style, driving on loose surfaces or in winter) the warning lamp (!) may take a while to light up or may remain switched off.**
- **Despite the tyre pressure monitoring system, the driver remains responsible for maintaining the correct tyre pressure. You must therefore check the tyre pressure often.**

Note

- **The tyre pressure monitoring system is not a replacement for regularly checking the tyre pressure, as it is unable to recognise an even drop in pressure.**
- **The tyre pressure monitoring system is unable to warn of a sudden drop in tyre pressure, e.g. a puncture. In this case, try to stop the vehicle carefully with no severe braking or steering manoeuvres.**
- **To ensure the tyre pressure monitoring system works correctly, the basic setting must be performed every 10 000 km (6000 miles) or once a year.**
- **If the battery is disconnected the warning lamp (!) lights up when the ignition is switched on. This warning lamp must switch off after covering a short distance.**

Winter service

Winter tyres

Winter tyres will significantly improve handling of the vehicle in winter road conditions. The design of summer tyres (width, rubber compound, tread pattern) gives less grip at temperatures below +7°C (45°F), on ice and snow. This applies particularly to vehicles equipped with **wide section tyres** or **high speed tyres** (code letters H or V on the sidewall).

In order to preserve the performance of the vehicle as much as possible, winter tyres must be fitted on all four wheels, the minimum depth of the tread must be 4 mm and the maximum age must be 4 years.

You can use winter tyres of a lower speed rating if the maximum speed limit of these tyres will not be exceeded, even if the maximum speed limit for the vehicle is higher.

For the sake of the environment

Summer tyres should be fitted again in time, as they give better handling on roads free of snow and ice and at temperatures over +7°C (45°F). Summer tyres have a shorter braking distance, produce less rolling noise and do not wear as quickly. They also reduce fuel consumption.

Technical data

Technical specifications

Important information

Important

The information in the vehicle documentation always takes precedence over the information in this Instruction Manual.

All technical specifications provided in this documentation are valid for the standard model in Spain. The vehicle data card included in the Maintenance Programme or the vehicle registration documents shows which engine is installed in the vehicle.

The figures may be different depending whether additional equipment is fitted, for different models, for special vehicles and for other countries.

Abbreviations used in the Technical Specifications section

kW	Kilowatt, engine power measurement.
PS	Pferdestärke (horsepower), formerly used to denote engine power.
rpm	Revolutions per minute - engine speed.
Nm	Newton metres, unit of engine torque.
CZ	Cetane number, indication of the diesel combustion power.
RON	Research octane number, indication of the knock resistance of petrol.

Vehicle identification data on the data label

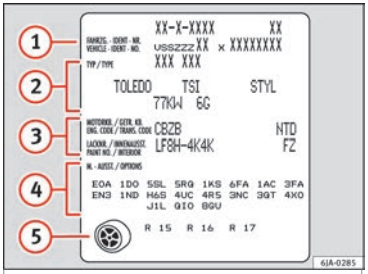


Fig. 217 Data sticker.

Vehicle data sticker

The vehicle data sticker ››› **Fig. 217** is located on the boot floor and is also attached to the Maintenance Programme.

The following information is provided on the vehicle data sticker:

1. Vehicle identification number (VIN)
2. Vehicle model
3. Identifying letters of the gearbox/number of the original paint finish/Interior equipment number/engine power/engine identifying letter »

(4) Partial description of the vehicle

(5) Diameter of authorised tyre in inches[1)]

Type plate

The model plate is located at the bottom of the B pillar, between the front and rear doors, on the right-hand side.

The type plate indicates the following weights:

- Total permitted weight of the vehicle when loaded
- Maximum authorised weight of the vehicle with a trailer, when the vehicle operates as a tractor
- Maximum permitted load of the front axle
- Maximum permitted load of the rear axle

Weight in running order

The weight in running order only has one approximate value. This value corresponds to the minimum operative weight of the vehicle without additional equipment that increases its weight, i.e. air conditioning, spare wheel, towing bracket.

The running order weight also includes 75 kg of the weight of the driver and service fluids, in addition to a fuel tank at 90% capacity.

From the difference between the total permitted weight in running order the approximate carrying capacity can be calculated »» ⚠.

The carrying capacity must include:

- occupants,
- all pieces of equipment and other weights,
- roof loads including the roof rack,
- equipment that is not included in the running order weight,
- when using the towing bracket, the drawbar load (max. 50 kg)

Calculating fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions according to the ECE regulations and the EU specifications

Calculation of fuel consumption for urban driving begins when cold-starting the engine. Then, normal city driving is simulated.

In calculating extra-urban driving fuel consumption, braking and acceleration is done in all gears, as in daily use of the vehicle. Driving speed varies within a range of 0 and 120 km/h (75 mph).

The consumption value in combined driving is composed of 37% of the value of urban driving and 63% of the value of extra-urban driving.

⚠ WARNING

The maximum permitted weight values must not be exceeded – Risk of an accident and damage to the vehicle!

Note

- **If you wish to calculate the exact weight of your vehicle please contact a SEAT dealer.**
- **Depending on the volume of equipment, driving style, road conditions, weather conditions and the condition of the vehicle, consumption values can differ from the theoretical values stated here.**

Information on fuel consumption

Fuel consumption

Approved consumption values are derived from measurements performed or supervised by certified EU laboratories, according to the legislation in force at the time (for more information, see the Publications Office of the European Union on the EUR-Lex website: © European Union, http://eur-lex.europa.eu/) and apply to the specified vehicle characteristics.

[1)] Valid only for certain countries.

The values relating to fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions can be found in the documentation provided to the purchaser of the vehicle at the time of purchase.

Fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions depend on the equipment/features of each individual vehicle, as well as on the driving style, road conditions, traffic conditions, environmental conditions, load or number of passengers.

Note

In practice, and considering all the factors mentioned here, consumption values can differ from those calculated in the current European regulations.

Weights

Kerb weight refers to the basic model with a fuel tank filled to 90% capacity and without optional extras. The figure quoted includes 75 kg to allow for the weight of the driver.

Special versions, optional equipment fittings or retro-fitting accessories will increase the weight of the vehicle ››› ⚠.

WARNING

- **Please note that the centre of gravity may shift when transporting heavy objects; this may affect vehicle handling and lead to an accident. Always adjust your speed and driving style to suit road conditions and requirements.**
- **Never exceed the gross axle weight rating or the gross vehicle weight rating. If the permissible axle load or the permissible total weight is exceeded, the driving characteristics of the vehicle may change, which could lead to accidents, injuries and damage to the vehicle.**

Driving with a trailer

Trailer weights

Trailer weight

The trailer weights and drawbar loads approved are selected in intensive trials according to precisely defined criteria. The approved trailer weights are valid for vehicles in the *EU* for maximum speeds of 80 km/h (50 mph) (in certain circumstances up to 100 km/h (62 mph)). The figures may be different in other countries. All data in the official vehicle documentation takes precedence over these data at all times ››› ⚠.

Drawbar loads

The *maximum* permitted drawbar load on the ball joint of the towing bracket must not exceed **50 kg**.

In the interest of road safety, we recommend that you always tow approaching the maximum drawbar load. The response of the trailer on the road will be poor, if the drawbar load is too small.

If the maximum permissible drawbar load cannot be met (e.g. with small, empty and light-weight single axle trailers or tandem axle trailers with a wheelbase of less than 1 metre), a minimum of 4% of the actual trailer weight is legally required for the drawbar load.

WARNING

- **For safety reasons, you should not drive at speeds above 80 km/h (50 mph) when towing a trailer. This also applies in countries where higher speeds are permitted.**
- **Never exceed the maximum trailer weights or the drawbar load. If the permissible axle load or the permissible total weight is exceeded, the driving characteristics of the vehicle may change, leading to accidents, injuries and damage to the vehicle.**

Wheels

Tyre pressure, snow chains, wheel bolts

Tyre pressures

The sticker with the tyre pressure values can be found on the inside of the fuel tank flap. The tyre pressure values given there are for *cold* tyres. Do not reduce the slightly raised pressures of warm tyres ››› ⚠.

The pressure for winter tyres is 0.2 bar (2.9 psi / 20 kPa) higher than that of summer tyres.

Snow chains

Snow chains may be fitted only to the *front wheels*.

Consult the section “wheels” of this manual.

Wheel bolts

After the wheels have been changed, the **tightening torque** of the wheel bolts should be checked as soon as possible with a torque wrench ››› ⚠. The tightening torque for steel and alloy wheels is **120** Nm.

⚠ WARNING

- **Check the tyre pressure at least once per month. Checking the tyre pressure is very important. If the tyre pressure is too high or too low, there is an increased danger of accidents - particularly at high speeds.**
- **If the tightening torque of the wheel bolts is too low, they could loosen while the vehicle is in motion. Risk of accident! If the tightening torque is too high, the wheel bolts and threads can be damaged.**

Note

We recommend that you ask your Technical Service for information about appropriate wheel, tyre and snow chain size.

Engine data

Petrol engine 1.2 TSI 66 kW (90 PS)

Power output in kW (PS) at rpm	Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)	No. of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	Fuel
66 (90)/4,400-5,400	160/1,400-3,500	4/1,197	Super 95 RON/Normal 91 RON[a)]

[a)] Slight power loss.

Outputs and weights		Ecomotive
Top speed (km/h)	186 (5)	186 (5)
Acceleration from 0-80 km/h (seconds)	7.3	7.3
Acceleration from 0-100 km/h (seconds)	11.3	11.3
Maximum authorised weight (kg)	1,616	1,625
Weight in running order (with driver) (kg)	1,156	1,165
Maximum authorised weight on front axle (kg)	820	820
Maximum authorised weight on rear axle (kg)	830	830
Permitted roof load (kg)	75	75
Maximum trailer weight without brakes (kg)	570	580
Weight of trailer with brakes, gradients up to 8% (kg)	1,000	1,000
Weight of trailer with brakes, gradients up to 12% (kg)	900	900

Petrol engine 1.2 TSI 81 kW (110 PS)

Power output in kW (PS) at rpm	Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)	No. of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	Fuel
81 (110)/4,600-5,600	175/1,400-4,000	4/1,197	Super 95 RON/Normal 91 RON[a)]

[a)] Slight power loss.

Outputs and weights	manual	manual Ecomotive
Top speed (km/h)	200 (5)	200 (5)
Acceleration from 0-80 km/h (seconds)	6.5	6.5
Acceleration from 0-100 km/h (seconds)	9.8	9.9
Maximum authorised weight (kg)	1,636	1,645
Weight in running order (with driver) (kg)	1,176	1,185
Maximum authorised weight on front axle (kg)	840	840
Maximum authorised weight on rear axle (kg)	830	830
Permitted roof load (kg)	75	75
Maximum trailer weight without brakes (kg)	580	590
Weight of trailer with brakes, gradients up to 8% (kg)	1,200	1,200
Weight of trailer with brakes, gradients up to 12% (kg)	1,100	1,100

Petrol engine 1.6 81 kW (110 PS)

Power output in kW (PS) at rpm	Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)	No. of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	Fuel
81 (110)/5,800	155/3,800-4,000	4/1,598	Super 95 RON/Normal 91 RON[a)]

[a)] Slight power loss.

Outputs and weights	manual	automatic
Top speed (km/h)	191 (5)	191 (6)
Acceleration from 0-80 km/h (seconds)	6.7	7.7
Acceleration from 0-100 km/h (seconds)	10.3	11.5
Maximum authorised weight (kg)	1,625	1,665
Weight in running order (with driver) (kg)	1,165	1,205
Maximum authorised weight on front axle (kg)	820	860
Maximum authorised weight on rear axle (kg)	840	840
Permitted roof load (kg)	75	75
Maximum trailer weight without brakes (kg)	580	600
Weight of trailer with brakes, gradients up to 8% (kg)	1,100	1,100
Weight of trailer with brakes, gradients up to 12% (kg)	1,000	1,000

Petrol engine 1.4 TSI 92 kW (125 PS)

Power output in kW (PS) at rpm	Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)	No. of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	Fuel
92 (125)/5,000-6,000	200/1,400-4,000	4/1,395	Super 95 RON/Normal 91 RON[a)]

[a)] Slight power loss.

Outputs and weights		Ecomotive
Top speed (km/h)	208 (6)	208 (6)
Acceleration from 0-80 km/h (seconds)	6.3	6.4
Acceleration from 0-100 km/h (seconds)	9	9
Maximum authorised weight (kg)	1,677	1,686
Weight in running order (with driver) (kg)	1,217	1,226
Maximum authorised weight on front axle (kg)	880	880
Maximum authorised weight on rear axle (kg)	830	830
Permitted roof load (kg)	75	75
Maximum trailer weight without brakes (kg)	600	610
Weight of trailer with brakes, gradients up to 8% (kg)	1,200	1,200
Weight of trailer with brakes, gradients up to 12% (kg)	1,200	1,200

Diesel Engine 1.4 CR 66 kW (90 PS)

Power output in kW (PS) at rpm	Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)	No. of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	Fuel
66 (90)/3,500	230/1,750-2,500	4/1,422	Diesel according to standard EN 590, min. 51 CZ

Outputs and weights	manual	manual Ecomotive	automatic Ecomotive
Top speed (km/h)	185 (5)	185 (5)	185 (7)
Acceleration from 0-80 km/h (seconds)	8	8	8.2
Acceleration from 0-100 km/h (seconds)	11.7	11.7	11.8
Maximum authorised weight (kg)	1,694	1,694	1,715
Weight in running order (with driver) (kg)	1,234	1,234	1,255
Maximum authorised weight on front axle (kg)	890	890	910
Maximum authorised weight on rear axle (kg)	840	840	840
Permitted roof load (kg)	75	75	75
Maximum trailer weight without brakes (kg)	610	610	620
Weight of trailer with brakes, gradients up to 8% (kg)	1,100	1,100	1,100
Weight of trailer with brakes, gradients up to 12% (kg)	1,000	750	1,000

Diesel Engine 1.6 CR 85 kW (115 PS)

Power output in kW (PS) at rpm	Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)	No. of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	Fuel
85 (115)/3,500-4,000	250/1,500-3,000	4/1,598	Diesel according to standard EN 590, min. 51 CZ

Outputs and weights		Ecomotive
Top speed (km/h)	201 (5)	201 (5)
Acceleration from 0-80 km/h (seconds)	6.9	6.9
Acceleration from 0-100 km/h (seconds)	10	10
Maximum authorised weight (kg)	1,735	1,740
Weight in running order (with driver) (kg)	1,272	1,280
Maximum authorised weight on front axle (kg)	910	910
Maximum authorised weight on rear axle (kg)	870	870
Permitted roof load (kg)	75	75
Maximum trailer weight without brakes (kg)	630	640
Weight of trailer with brakes, gradients up to 8% (kg)	1,200	1,200
Weight of trailer with brakes, gradients up to 12% (kg)	1,200	1,200

Dimensions

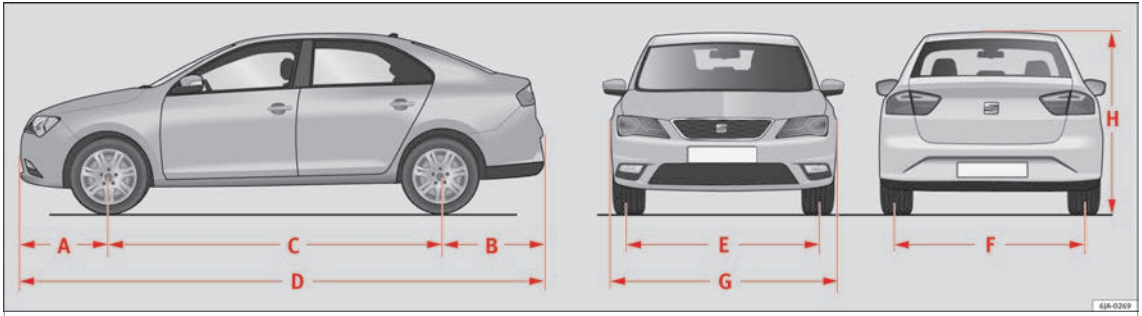


Fig. 218 Dimensions

		TOLEDO
A/B	Front and rear projection (mm)	876/1,004
C	Wheelbase (mm)	2,602
D	Length (mm)	4,482
E/F	Front/rear[a)] track width (mm)	1,463/1,500
G	Width (mm)	1,715
H	Height at kerb weight (mm)	1,466
	Turning radius (m)	10.2

[a)] This data will change depending on the type of wheel rim.

Index

A

ABS
control lamp 155
see also Anti-lock brake system 154, 155
Accessories 134, 192
Additional electrical appliances (efficiency programme) 28
Adjusting
front head restraints 59
Adjusting the head restraints
front head restraints 128
Adjustment
CAR menu 99
front head restraints 128
lights 117
rear head restraints 59
seats 56
Aerial 194
Air-conditioning
economic use 143
Airbag covers 14
Airbags 66
description 67
Airbag system 14, 66
activation 68
control lamp 68
deactivation of front airbag 68, 71
description 67
front airbags 14, 69
functioning 68
head-protection airbags 16
side airbags 15
Air conditioning 36, 37
air vents 143
faults 143
introduction 142
operation 145
Alarm system 112
Alternator
control lamp 212
Ambient lighting 123
Anti-freeze 40
Anti-lock brake system 154, 155
Anti-puncture 45, 76
Anti-puncture kit 45, 76
check after 10 minutes 78
Anti-slip regulation 156
Anti-theft alarm 112
Anti-theft security system 9
Anti-theft system 108
Armrest
front seats 129
rear seats 130
Ashtrays 134
Aspects to take into account before starting the vehicle 55
ASR
control lamp 156
see also Traction control system 154, 156
Assistance systems
ABS 155
ASR 156
cruise speed 174
EDS 156
front Assist Monitoring system 176
parking aid 167, 168
Start-Stop 181
tiredness detection 182
tyre monitoring system 219
Assisted starting 51
Audible signal 61
Audible warning signal
warning and control lamps 98
warning and indication lamps 98
Automatic air conditioning
climatronic 147
Automatic car washes
see Washing 194
Automatic gearbox
backup programme 160
driving programmes 160
instructions for use 157
kick-down 158
manual release of selector lever 35
parking 157
selector lever lock 159
selector lever positions 158
starting 157
stopping 157
tiptronic 157, 159
AUX-IN 104

B

Back seat
folding down and raising the back seat backrest 130
Ball coupling
disassembly 190
Battery 106
Before starting the vehicle 55
Belt tightening 65
Biodiesel 201
Blown bulbs
change a bulb 83
Bonnet 11, 205
opening the bonnet 203

Boot
hook . . . 139
retaining elements . . . 139
retaining nets . . . 139
Brake assist . . . 154
Brake fluid . . . 41
checking . . . 209
Brakes
brake fluid . . . 209
control lamp . . . 153
handbrake . . . 154
running in . . . 161
Brake servo . . . 154
Braking
brake assist . . . 154
Bulb failure
control lamp . . . 116

C

Capacities . . . 39
Car-care products . . . 193
Care of vehicle
door lock cylinder . . . 196
leatherette . . . 197
natural leather . . . 198
seat belts . . . 198
upholstery . . . 197
washing by hand . . . 194
Carrier system . . . 141
Catalytic converter . . . 164
malfunction . . . 164
CCS . . . 31
Central locking . . . 104
anti-theft alarm . . . 112
central locking button . . . 109
closing . . . 108
individualised settings . . . 107
keyless Access . . . 110
locking . . . 108
locking manually . . . 10
opening . . . 108
unlocking . . . 108
Central locking system . . . 107
Cetane number (diesel fuel) . . . 201
Change a bulb . . . 83
Changing a wheel . . . 46, 75
subsequent work . . . 49
Changing bulbs
daytime driving light . . . 86
dipped beam . . . 85
double headlight bulbs . . . 84
main beam headlight . . . 85
side light . . . 85
turn signal . . . 86
Changing bulbs on the number plate . . . 91
removing the bulb holder . . . 91
Changing bulbs on the side panel . . . 88
fitting the rear light . . . 89
removing the bulb holder . . . 88
removing the rear light . . . 87
Changing lights on the side panel . . . 87
Changing oil . . . 208
Changing rear lights on the rear lid
changing bulbs . . . 90
fitting the bulb-holder . . . 90
Changing settings
CAR menu . . . 21
Changing tail lights (on the rear lid . . . 89
Changing the bulbs
fog light . . . 86
Changing the rear lights on the rear lid
removing the bulb holder . . . 89
Charging the battery . . . 51
Checking levels
engine compartment . . . 205
Child-proof locking . . . 112
electric windows . . . 115
Child seat
categorisation in groups . . . 74
Child seats . . . 16, 74
ISOFIX system . . . 17
safety instructions . . . 16, 73
securing with the seat belt . . . 16
Top Tether system . . . 17
Cigarette lighter . . . 133
City Emergency braking function . . . 180
Cleaning . . . 193
chromed parts . . . 195
headlights . . . 196
leatherette . . . 197
natural leather . . . 198
plastic parts . . . 196
upholstery . . . 197, 198
washing the vehicle . . . 194
wheels . . . 197
windows . . . 196
Cleaning and thawing windows . . . 196
Climatronic . . . 36
adjusting the temperature . . . 148
air recirculation . . . 148
automatic mode . . . 148
blower selection . . . 148
windscreen defrost . . . 149
Close . . . 104
Closing
central locking . . . 108
vehicle with Keyless Access . . . 110
windows . . . 115
Coat hooks . . . 135
Coming Home and Leaving Home . . . 121

Coming Home and Leaving Home Function 121
Control and warning lamps
alternator 212
brakes 153
diesel particulate filter 164
emission control 165
engine oil 206
instrument panel 34
lights 116
Controls and displays
general instrument panel 93
Controls on the steering wheel
operating the audio system 101
operating the telephone and audio system .. 102
Cooling system
checking coolant 208
engine coolant temperature display 97
topping up coolant 208
Correct position 56
Correct sitting position
front passenger 57
rear seat passengers 58
Cruise control 31, 174
adjusting the stored speed 175
setting the speed 175
temporary deactivation 175
turning off the cruise control system 176

D

Damage to the vehicle 166
Dash panel 32
Data sticker 221
Deactivating the front passenger front airbag ... 14
Deactivation of front airbag 68, 71
Defrosting rear window 123
Diesel
diesel particulate filter 164
engine oil 205
preheating 149
refuelling 201
Diesel particulate filter
malfunction 164
Digital clock 94
Dimensions 231
Direction of rotation
tyres 49
Display 94, 95
Disposal
seat belt tensioners 66
Door cylinder 9
Door handle 9
Door lock 9
Doors
child-proof locking 112
opening and closing 9
Drink holder
centre console 132
rear seat armrest 133
Driver
see Correct sitting position 56, 57, 58
Driver information system
CD/radio indication 23
engine oil temperature display 28
operation with the windscreen wiper lever 23
Driving abroad
headlights 122
Driving data 23
data summary 27
memory 26
Driving through water 166
Driving with a trailer 184, 223
Dynamic headlight range control 117

E

E10
see Ethanol (fuel) 200
Easy Connect 21, 99
Economical
driving 162
EDL
see Electronic differential lock 154, 156
Efficiency programme
additional electrical appliances 28
saving tips 28
Electric windows 11, 115
Electronic differential lock 154, 156
Electronic immobiliser 9, 150
Electronic Stability Control (ESC) 154
Emergencies 75
automatic gearbox backup programme 160
bulbs 44
changing a wheel 46, 75
emergency towing of the vehicle 50
hazard warning lights 121
jump leads 51
puncture 44
replacing a blown fuse 43
Emergency
fuses 43
Emergency operation
front passenger door 10
selector lever 35
Emission control system
control lamp 165
Emissions data 221
Engine
assisted starting 51
preheating 149
run-in 161
Start-Stop system 181

starting 149
starting the engine 152
switching off the engine 152
Engine and ignition
starting the engine with Keyless Access 151
Engine compartment 11, 202, 205
battery 211
brake fluid 209
coolant 208
engine oil 207
opening the bonnet 203
windscreen washer fluid 210
Engine coolant 40
checking level 208
control lamp 208
G12 plus-plus 40
G13 40
specifications 40
topping up 209
Engine data 225
Engine fault
control lamp 165
Engine management 164
control lamp 165
Engine oil 40, 205
changing 205, 208
checking oil level 207
consumption 207
control lamp 206
dipstick 207
inspection service 205
maintenance intervals 205
Oil properties 40
specifications 205
temperature display 28
topping up 207
Environment
ecological driving 162
environmental compatibility 162
Environmental tip
refuelling 199
Equipment 134, 192
ESC
electronic stability control 154
Ethanol (fuel) 200
Exhaust gas purification system
catalytic converter 164
diesel particulate filter 164
Extending
the luggage compartment 130
Exterior lighting
change a bulb 83
Exterior mirrors
adjusting 13
exterior 126
heated 126
Exterior view 5, 6
External aerial 193

F

Fastening rings 137
Filling up the tank 199
Fire extinguisher 75
First-aid kit 75
Floor mats 60
Fluid Level control 39
Fog light bulb 86
removing the bulb holder 87
Front Airbag 14
Front airbags 69
Front Assist
city Emergency braking function 180
malfunction 177
on-screen messages 177
operating 178
radar sensor 177
switching off temporarily 179
system limitations 179
see also Front Assist Monitoring system 176
Front Assist monitoring system
malfunction 177
on-screen messages 177
operating 178
Front Assist Monitoring system 176
city Emergency braking function 180
radar sensor 177
Front Assist Monitoring System
switching off temporarily 179
system limitations 179
Front passenger front airbag
control lamp 71
deactivating 14
deactivation 71
Front seat
heating 128
manual adjustment 11
Front seats 127
Fuel 39
diesel 201
fuel level gauge 98
refuelling 199, 200
saving 162
Fuel consumption
switching off using inertia 162
why does fuel consumption increase? 164
Fuel tank flap
opening and closing 39
Full-LED Headlights 83

Fuses 80
identifying blown fuses 43
identifying by colours 43
in the dash panel 81
in the engine compartment 82
in the instrument panel 43
preparation before replacing 43
replacing 43

G

Gauge
fuel level 98
Gear-change indicator 25
Gearbox lever 34
Gear change 34
automatic 35
engaging the gears (manual gearbox) 156
manual 34
manual gearbox 156
Gear engaged 34
Gear recommendation 25
Gearshift paddles (automatic gearbox) 159
General instrument panel
control lamps 32
controls and displays 93
warning lamps 32
GRA 174
see also Cruise control 174

H

Handbrake 152, 154
Hand brake
control lamp 154
Hazard warning lights 19, 121
HBA 154
Head-protection airbags
description 16
safety instructions 70
Headlight range control 117
Headlights
change a bulb 83
driving abroad 122
headlight washers 126
Head restraints 12
adjustment 128
front head restraints 59
rear head restraints 59
Headrests 12
adjustment 128
front 59
rear 59
Heated rear window 123
Heating 144
air recirculation 144
introduction 142
rear window 123
Heating and fresh air 38
HHC 154
Hill hold control 154
Horn 93
How to jump start 51
description 52

I

Identifying letters on engine 221
Ignition 18, 149, 151
Ignition lock 18, 149, 151
Incorrect sitting position 58
Indications on the display 95
assist systems submenu 26
compass 96
distance travelled 95
doors, bonnet and rear lid open 25
driver information system 23
driving data 26
ECO 96
MKB 96
outside temperature 24
recommended gear 96
second speed display 96
selector lever position 96, 158
service intervals 30
speed warning 96
Start-Stop 96
time 96
warning and information messages 26
Infotainment system 21
Inspection 205
Inspection service 205
Instrument panel 94
display 94, 95
instruments 94
odometer 97
service interval indication 30
warning and control lamps 98
warning and indication lamps 98
Instruments 94
Interior
lighting 122
Interior lights 20
Interior view
left guide 7
right-hand drive 8
ISOFIX 17
ISOFIX system 17

J

Jack 46, 75
mounting points 48

Jump leads 51

K

Key-operated switch 68
Keyless Access
go 151
keyless-Entry 110
keyless-Exit 110
Keyless-Go ignition push button needs to be pressed 110
starter button 151
things to note 111
unlocking and locking the vehicle 110
Keyless Access lock and ignition system:
see Keyless Access 110
Keys
remote control 105
replacing the battery 106
unlocking and locking 9
vehicle keys 105

L

Lever
main beam headlights 118
turn signals 118
Lifting the vehicle 48
Lighting of the instrument panel 117
Lights 18, 116
automatic dipped beam control 119
change a bulb 83
coming home and Leaving Home 121
control and warning lamps 116
daytime running lights 118
dipped beam 117
front fog lights 120
front fog lights with cornering function 120
glove box 123
hazard warning lights 19
headlight flasher 119
headlight range control 117
interior lights 122, 123
lighting of the controls 117
lighting of the instruments 117
light switch 116
luggage compartment 123
main beam headlights 118
main beams 19
parking lights 121
parking lights on both sides 121
rear fog light 120
rear interior light 123
side lights 117
switch 18
turn signals 118
Loading the vehicle 137
luggage compartment 10
Locking
central locking 108
remote control 104
Locking and unlocking
in the door cylinder 9
with Keyless Access 110
with the central locking button 109
Locking the front passenger door manually 10
Luggage compartment 10
automatic lock 113
category N1 vehicles 139
light 123
net pocket 136
rear shelf 140
unlocking manually 10

M

Maintenance intervals 205
Malfunction
catalytic converter 164
diesel particulate filter 164
front assist 177
gearbox 160
Manual air conditioning
air recirculation 146
Manual air conditioning manual 145
Manual gearbox
gear lever 156
Mirror
vanity 124
Mobile 193
Mobile telephones 193
Model plate 221
Multimedia 104
Multimedia compartment 135

N

Net pocket
luggage compartment 136
Number of seats 61

O

Octane rating (petrol) 200
Odometer 94, 97
reset button 97
Oil properties 40
On-screen messages of the instrument panel
front Assist monitoring system 177
Open and close 104
Opening 104
bonnet 203
tank flap 199
vehicle, with Keyless Access 110
windows 115

Opening and closing 9
bonnet 203
central locking 108
in the door cylinder 9
rear lid of the luggage compartment 10
tank flap 199
windows 115
with the central locking button 109
Opening manually
rear lid 10
Outside temperature 24

P

Paint
care 195
damage 196
Paintwork
code 221
Parking aid 167
parking system plus 168
surroundings warning 168
Parking Aid
adjusting the display and audible warnings . 171
automatic activation 169
fault 171
operation 169
rear parking aid 168
sensors and camera: cleaning 195
towing bracket 171
visual indication 170
Parking aid system
see Parking aid 167, 168
Parking distance warning system
see Parking aid 167, 168
ParkPilot
see Parking aid 167, 168
Particulate filter
control lamp 164
Particulate filter (diesel) 164
Parts 192
Passenger
see Correct sitting position 56, 57, 58
Pedals 60
Petrol
additives 200
preheating 149
refuelling 200
Physical principles of a frontal collision 63
Plastic parts: cleaning 196
Polishing 195
Positioning seat belts
during pregnancy 64
seat belts 64
Power 134
Power socket 134
Power steering 150
control lamp 150
Pre-heating system
control lamp 165
Preheating 149
Puncture
action 44

R

Radar sensor 177
Radiator fan 205
Raising the vehicle 48
Rear Assist 171
instructions for use 172
parking 173
screen 172
special characteristics 173
Rear Assist system 171
Rear fog light
control lamp 116
Rear lid 10, 114
see also Luggage compartment 113
Rear lights
change a bulb 83
Rear seat passengers
see Correct sitting position 56, 57, 58
Rear View Camera 171
Rear view mirror
anti-dazzle 126
Rear view mirrors
adjusting the exterior mirrors 126
Rear window wiper blade
changing 54
cleaning 54
Refuelling 199
opening tank flap 199
Remote control 104
synchronisation 105
Repair work 192
Replacement
parts 192
Replacement parts 192
Replacing the battery
of the vehicle key 106
Reset the trip recorder 97
Rev counter 94, 95
Reverse (automatic gearbox) 158
Rims
changing a wheel 46
Roll-back function
windows 115
Roof carrier 141
roof load 142
Roof rack 141
attachment points 141

Rubber seals
care 196
Run-in
new engine 161
new tyres 215
the first 1,500 km 161
Running in
brake pads 161
the tyres 161

S

Safe 108
driving safe 55
Safety
child safety 72
child seats 72
deactivating the front passenger airbag 14
Safe driving 55
Safety equipment 55
Safety instructions
head-protection airbags 70
side airbags 69
using child seats 16, 73
Safety notes
seat belt tensioners 66
using seat belts 62
Saving tips (efficiency programme) 28
Seat belt position
for pregnant women 12, 64
seat belts 12, 64
Seat belt release 64
Seat belts 61
adjustment 12, 64
cleaning 198
control lamp 61
height adjustment 65
protective function 61
safety notes 62
unfastened 63
Seat belt tensioners 13, 65
Seat heating 128
Selector lever
positions 158
Selector lever lock 159
Selector lever (automatic gearbox)
malfunction 159
manual release 35
Service interval indication 30
Service notification: read 31
Side airbags
description 15
safety instructions 69
see also Airbag system 15
Signal lever 19
Sitting position
driver 56
Snow chains 49, 224
Spanner symbol 30
Spare wheel 218
Speed warning device 29
Start-Stop
operating 181
Start-Stop System 181
Starter button 151
Starting the engine 149, 152
Starting the vehicle 18
Steering
steering lock 149
Steering wheel
adjustment 13
setting 57
Steering wheel controls 100
Storage
luggage compartment 138
Storage compartment 131
front seats 132
glasses 135
in front door 136
in the centre console 136
in the luggage compartment 136
passenger side 131
reflective vest 132
Storage compartments 131
Sun visors 124
Switch
hazard warning lights 121
Switching off the engine
with the key 152
Switching off the lights 116
Switching on the lights 116
Switching the ignition on and off 149
System Easy Connect 99

T

Tailgate locking time extension
see Luggage compartment 113
Technical specifications 221
Temperature display
engine oil 28
outside temperature 24
Temperature selection
heating 144
Tightening torque of wheel bolts 224
Timer 28
lap times 28
menu 28
statistics 28
Tiptronic (automatic gearbox) 157, 159
Tiredness detection 182
Top speed 29
Top Tether 17

Top Tether system 17
Tow-starting 51
Tow-starting the engine 78
Tow-starting the vehicle 78
Towing bracket device 184
Towing the vehicle 50
Towline anchorages 50
  front 79
Traction control 156
Traction control system 154
Trailer 184
  ball coupling 188
  correct placement 189
  driving with a trailer 185
  parking Aid 171
  service position 187
  towing bracket device 186
  trailer weights 184
  use and maintenance 191
Trailer weights 223
Transporting children 72
Transporting items
  carrier system 141
  roof carrier 141
Trip recorder 94
Tyre mobility set 45
  components 77
  sealing a tyre 77
Tyre Mobility Set
  inflating a tyre 77
Tyre Mobility System
  see Anti-puncture kit 76
Tyre monitoring system 219
Tyre pressure monitoring
  control lamp 219
Tyre pressures 224
Tyre Profile 216
Tyre repair 76
Tyre repair kit
  see Anti-puncture kit 76
Tyres 215
  changing 46
  dimensions 217
  new tyres 217
  useful life 216
  wear indicators 216
  with compulsory direction of rotation 49
  with directional tread pattern 218
Tyre tread depth 216
Tyre wear 216

U

Unfasten the seat belt 12
Unlocking
  central locking 108
  remote control 104
Unlocking and locking 9
  with Keyless Access 110
  with the central locking button 109
USB/AUX-IN input 104

V

Vehicle
  chassis number 221
  data label 221
  identification data 221
  identification number 221
  raising 48
  unlocking and locking with Keyless Access . . 110
Vehicle battery 41, 211
  assisted starting 51
  automatic disconnection of electrical equipment 214
  checking electrolyte level 213
  connecting and disconnecting 211
  disconnect and connect 31
  lifting the cover 212
  replacing 214
  winter conditions 211
  winter service 213
Vehicle care
  car wash 194
  cleaning of chromed parts 195
  headlights 196
  heated seats 198
  high-pressure cleaners 194
  paint polishing 195
  rubber seals 196
  stickers 195
  waxing 195
  wheel cleaning 197
  windscreen wipers service position 53
Vehicle interior monitoring and anti-tow system
  activation 113
Vehicle seats 61
Vehicle tool kit 46, 75
Vehicle underbody
  protection 197
Vehicle washing 194
Ventilation slits 137

W

Warning and control lamps 32, 98
  ABS 155
  airbags 68
  ASR 156
  audible warning signal 98
  coolant temperature 208
  engine management 165
  engine pre-heating/fault system 165
  hand brake 154

instrument panel 32
instrument panel display 33
power steering 150
pressing the brake 177
seat belt 61
tyre pressure 219
Warning and control lights
ESC 154
Warning and indication lamps 98
audible warning signal 98
break recommendation 183
coolant temperature 97
deactivation of the airbag 14
diesel particulate filter 164
disabling airbag 71
fuel level 98
gearbox malfunctions 160
Start-Stop 181
Warning symbols
see Warning and control lamps 98
Warning triangle 75
Washing
by hand 194
care of the vehicle exterior 194
car wash 194
stickers 195
with high-pressure cleaners 194
Washing the vehicle
things to note 111
Weights 223
Wheel
changing 217
Wheel bolts 224
caps 47
loosening and tightening 47
Wheel cover 46
Wheels 215, 224
anti-theft bolts 47
chains 224
changing 46, 49, 75
cleaning 197
new wheels 217
snow chains 49
spare wheel 218
wheel bolts 76
wheel cover 46
Wheel trim
removing 47
Windows
electric 11, 115
removing ice 196
Window wiper blade 20
Windscreen washer 41
headlight washers 126
Windscreen washer fluid
checking 210
winter 210
Windscreen washers 124
Windscreen washer water
checking 210
topping up 210
Windscreen wiper
jets 125
Windscreen wipers 20, 124
control 125
lifting the wiper blades 53
replacing the wiper blades 53
service position 53
windscreen washer fluid 210
Winter conditions
battery 211
diesel 201
snow chains 49
tyres 220
Winters conditions
thawing windows 196
Winter service
battery 213
disconnecting and connecting 214
Winter tyres 220
Wipe interval 125

SEAT S.A. is permanently concerned about continuous development of its types and models. For this reason we ask you to understand, that at any given time, changes regarding shape, equipment and technique may take place on the car delivered. For this reason no right at all may derive based on the data, drawings and descriptions in this current handbook.

All texts, illustrations and standards in this handbook are based on the status of information at the time of printing. Except for error or omission, the information included in the current handbook is valid as of the date of closing print.

Re-printing, copying or translating, whether total or partial is not allowed unless SEAT allows it in written form.

SEAT reserves all rights in accordance with the “Copyright” Act.

All rights on changes are reserved.

This paper has been manufactured using bleached non-chlorine cellulose.

© SEAT S.A. - Reprint: 15.11.16

6JA012720BG

Inglés 6JA012720BG (11.16)

SEAT

SEAT recommends
SEAT **GENUINE OIL**

SEAT recommends
Castrol EDGE Professional